NAVMC 3500.2C w/CH1

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A
     (b) MCO 1553.3B
     (c) MCTP 8-10A
     (d) MCTP 8-10B
     (e) MCO 1553.2C

Encl: (1) AAV T&R Manual

1. Purpose. Per reference (a), this Training and Readiness (T&R) Manual, contained in enclosure (1), establishes training standards, regulations, and policies regarding the training of Marines and assigned Navy personnel in the Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) occupational field.

2. Cancellation. NAVMC 3500.2B

3. Scope
   a. Per reference (b), commanders will conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to execute its mission and develop long-, mid-, and short-range training plans to sustain proficiency and correct deficiencies. Training plans will incorporate these events to standardize training and provide objective assessment of progress toward attaining combat readiness. Commanders will keep records at the unit and individual levels to record training achievements, identify training gaps and document objective assessments of readiness associated with training Marines and assigned Navy personnel. References (c) and (d) provide amplifying information for effective planning and management of training within the unit.

   b. Formal school and training detachment commanders will use references (a) and (e) to ensure programs of instruction meet skill training requirements established in this manual and provides career-progression training in the events designated for initial training in the formal school environment.

4. Information. Commanding General (CG), Training and Education Command (TECOM) will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: CG, TECOM, Marine Air Ground Task Force Training and Education Standards Division (C 466), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, Virginia 22134.
5. **Command.** This manual is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.

6. **Certification.** Reviewed and approved this date.

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10033193800
From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Encl: (1) New page iii insert to NAVMC 3500.2C
(2) New Appendix H insert to NAVMC 3500.2C

1. Situation. To transmit new page iii insert and Appendix H to the basic manual.

2. Mission. Changes to various events to incorporate Tactical Decision Kit (TDK) as an acceptable simulator to conduct simulated training repetitions for those events where the Deployed Virtual Training Environment has already been identified. Appendix H reflects those events that will be updated to include TDK.

3. Execution
   a. Replace page iii with enclosure (1).
   b. Add Appendix H (enclosure 2) at the end of the manual.

4. Information
   a. This revision is the result of efforts to immediately carry out the intent of the Marine Corps Operating Concept by introducing simulation tools like the TDK into ground training and readiness manuals where appropriate.
   b. The contents of appendix H are considered directive to the assault amphibious vehicle occupational field when training Marines for operations.

5. Filing Instructions. This change transmittal will be filed immediately following the signature page of the basic manual.

K. M. IIAMS
By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10033193801

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.
LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Location: ________________________________

(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this manual)
RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change Number</th>
<th>Date of Change</th>
<th>Date Entered</th>
<th>Signature of Person Incorporating Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

1. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . OVERVIEW

2. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

3. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . BATTALION & COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

4. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

5. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . SECTION & CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

6. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . MOS 1803 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

7. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . MOS 1833 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

8. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AA BATTALION LOW DENSITY MOS EVENTS

APPENDICES

A. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

B. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

C. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . CLASS V(W) REQUIREMENTS

D. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . SIMULATION

E. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS

F. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . REFERENCES

G. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS

H . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . LIST OF T&R EVENTS TRAINED TO STANDARD BY TACTICAL DECISION KITS
ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 1
OVERVIEW

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAGRAPH</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT TRAINING</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORGANIZATION</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T&amp;R EVENT CODING</td>
<td>1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T&amp;R EVENT COMPOSITION</td>
<td>1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP)</td>
<td>1-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP CALCULATION</td>
<td>1-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR TRAINING</td>
<td>1-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIGHT TRAINING</td>
<td>1-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RISK MANAGEMENT (RM)</td>
<td>1-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPROVISED EXPLOSIVE TRAINING</td>
<td>1-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS</td>
<td>1-14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

1000. INTRODUCTION

1. The T&R Program is the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training and assessing training readiness. Subject matter experts (SMEs) from the operating forces developed core capability Mission Essential Task List(s) (METLs) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL). This T&R Manual is built around these METLs and other related Marine Corps Tasks (MCT). All events contained in the Manual relate directly to these METLs and MCTs. This comprehensive T&R Program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish real-world missions.

2. The T&R Manual contains the individual and collective training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. The T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program is found in reference (a).

3. The T&R Manual is designed for use by unit commanders to determine pre-deployment training requirements in preparation for training and for Formal Schools and Training Detachments to create Programs of Instruction (POI). This directive focuses on individual and collective tasks performed by operating forces (OPFOR) units and supervised by personnel in the performance of unit Mission Essential Tasks (METs).

1001. UNIT TRAINING

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential.

2. Commanders will ensure that all training is focused on their combat mission. Unit training should focus on achieving proficiency in the unit METL. The T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit's training plan based on the unit METL, as approved by their higher commander and reported in the DRRS. Training will support the unit METL and be designed to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of standards based training consistent with Marine Corps T&R standards cannot be over emphasized.
1002. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1. Effective Unit Training Management (UTM) focuses the overall organization on development of training plans based on the unit METL and standards-based community T&R events. This is accomplished in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its mission.

2. UTM techniques, described in reference (b), (c), and (d) provide commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. To maintain an efficient and effective training program, leaders at every level must understand and implement UTM.

1003. SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING

1. Marines are expected to maintain proficiency in the training events for their MOS at the appropriate grade or billet to which assigned. Leaders are responsible for recording the training achievements of their Marines. For individual or collective training events not executed and evaluated as part of the daily routine, leaders must ensure proficiency is sustained by requiring retraining of each event at or before expiration of the designated sustainment interval.

2. The evaluation of training is necessary to properly prepare Marines for combat. Evaluations are either formal or informal, and performed by members of the unit (internal evaluation) or from an external command (external evaluation). The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's/Marine's proficiency in the tasks that must be performed in combat. Informal evaluations are conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events.

3. Evaluation is a continuous process that is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of planning and the conduct of training. To ensure training is efficient and effective, evaluation is an integral part of the training plan. Ultimately, leaders remain responsible for determining if the training was effective.

1004. ORGANIZATION

This Assault Amphibious Vehicle T&R Manual is comprised of 8 chapters and 7 appendices. Chapter 1 is an overview of the Ground T&R Program. Chapter 2 lists the core METs/Marine Corps Tasks supported by the community, which are used as part of the DRRS. Chapters 3-5 contain collective AAV events. Chapters 6-8 contain individual events specific to a particular MOS and/or billet, as noted. Appendix A contains acronyms; Appendix B contains terms and definitions; Appendix C contains class V(W) requirements; Appendix D contains simulation information; Appendix E contains consolidated gunnery events; Appendix F contains references; and Appendix G contains MOS-Specific Physical Standards.
1005. T&R EVENT CODING

1. **Event Code.** The event code is an up to 4-4-4 alphanumeric character set:

   a. First up to 4 characters indicate MOS or Community (e.g., 0321, 1812 or INTL)

   b. Second up to 4 characters indicate functional or duty area (e.g. DEF, FSPT, MVMT, etc.)

   c. Third 4 characters indicate the unit size and supported unit, if applicable (1000 through 9000), and sequence. Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of unit size to event code. NOTE: The titles for the various echelons are for example only, and are not exclusive. For example: 4000-level events are appropriate for Section-level events as noted, but also for Squad-level events.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Individual Training</th>
<th>Individual Training</th>
<th>Collective Training</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entry-Level</td>
<td>Skills Progression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formal School</td>
<td>MOJT, Advanced Level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training (Core Skills)</td>
<td>Schools (Core Plus Skills)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000-level</td>
<td>2000-level</td>
<td>3000-level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Collective Training</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squad/Section</td>
<td>Platoon</td>
<td>Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4000-level</td>
<td>5000-level</td>
<td>6000-level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Collective Training</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battalion/Squadron</td>
<td>Regiment/Group</td>
<td>Command Element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7000-level</td>
<td>8000-level</td>
<td>9000-level</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   **Figure. 1-1 T&R Event Levels**

2. **Grouping.** Categorizing events with the use of a recognizable code makes the type of skill or capability being referenced fairly obvious. Examples include: PAT for patrolling events, DEF for events in the defense, FSPT for events related to fire support, etc. There is no special significance to the functional areas, but they should be intuitive to make it as easy as possible for the T&R user to find events. When organizing the T&R Manual, functional areas are alphabetized then the associated events are numbered. The events will be numbered based upon the introduction of each new functional area, allowing up to "999" events. For example: if there are seven Administrative events 4431 occupational field, then the events should start 4431-ADMN-1001 and run through 1007. Next, the Bulk Fuel events, BUFL should start at 4431-BUFL-1001.

3. **Sequencing.** A numerical code is assigned to each individual (1000-2000 level) or collective (3000-9000 level) training event. The first number identifies the size of the unit performing the event, as depicted in figure 1-1. EXCEPTION: Events that relate to staff planning, to the conduct of a command operations center or to staff level decision making processes will be numbered according to the level of the unit to which the staff belongs. For example: an infantry battalion staff conducting planning for an offensive
attack would be labeled as INF-PLAN-7001 even though the entire battalion is not actively involved in the planning of the operation. T&R event sequence numbers that begin with "9" are reserved for Marine Air Ground Task Forces (MAGTF) Command Element (CE) events. An example of event coding is displayed in Figure 1-2.

Functional Area

MOS/Community--------> ####-####-#### <-1st event in sequence

**Event level**

Figure 1-2: T&R Event Coding

1006. **T&R EVENT COMPOSITION**

1. An event contained within a T&R Manual is an individual or collective training standard. This section explains each of the components that make up the T&R event. These items will be included in all of the events in each T&R Manual. Community-based T&R Manuals may have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R Manuals. The event condition, event title (behavior) and event standard should be read together as a grammatical sentence.

2. An example of a collective T&R event is provided in figure 1-3 and an example of an individual T&R event is provided in figure 1-4. Events shown in figures are for illustrative purposes only and are not actual T&R events.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XXXX-XXXX-####: Provide interior guard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT #.##</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVALUATION CODED: YES/NO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESCRIPTION: Text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONDITION: Text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STANDARD: Text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT COMPONENTS:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Event component.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Event component.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Event component.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFERENCES:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREREQUISITE EVENTS:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXX-XXXX-####</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXX-XXXX-####</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERNAL SUPPORTED:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXX-XXXX-####</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXX-XXXX-####</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTERNAL SUPPORTING:
XXXX-XXXX-####
 XXXX-XXXX-####

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
EQUIPMENT: XXX
MISCELLANEOUS: XXX
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: XXX

Figure 1-3: Example of a Collective T&R Event

INTERNAL SUPPORTING:
XXXX-XXXX-####
 XXXX-XXXX-####

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
EQUIPMENT: XXX
MISCELLANEOUS: XXX
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: XXX

XXX-XXXX-####: Stand a sentry post

EVALUATION CODED: NO
SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Text

MOS PERFORMING: ####, ####

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: XXX

CONDITION: Text

STANDARD: Text

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Event component.
2. Event component.
3. Event component.

REFERENCES:
1. Reference
2. Reference
3. Reference

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
XXXX-XXXX-####
 XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTED:
XXXX-XXXX-####
 XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTING:
XXXX-XXXX-####
 XXXX-XXXX-####

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
EQUIPMENT: XXX
MISCELLANEOUS: XXX
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: XXX
Figure 1-4: Example of an Individual Event

1. **Event Code.** The event code is explained in paragraph 1005.

2. **Title.** The name of the event. The event title contains one action verb and ideally, one object.

3. **Evaluation Coded.** Collective events categorize the capabilities that a given unit may be expected to perform. There are some collective events that the Marine Corps has determined that a unit MUST be able to perform, if that unit is to be considered fully ready for operations. These E-Coded events represent the irreducible minimum or the floor of readiness for a unit. E-Coded events are derived from the training measures of effectiveness for the METs for units that must report readiness in the DRRS. It would seem intuitive that most E-Coded events would be for Battalion sized units and higher since those are the units that report in DRRS. However, if the Marine Corps has determined that the readiness of a subordinate, supporting unit to accomplish a particular collective event is vital to the accomplishment of the supported unit's MET, then that lower echelon collective event is E-Coded.

4. **Supported MET(s).** List all METs that are supported by the training event in the judgment of the occupation field drafting the T&R Manual, even if those events are not listed as Measure of Effectiveness (MOEs) in a MET.

5. **Sustainment Interval.** It is critical to understand the intent of the Sustainment Interval so training time is not wasted with duplicated training. Sustainment Interval is expressed in number of months. Most individual T&R events and many lower level collective events are never out of sustainment because they are either part of a Marine's daily routine, or are frequently executed within the sustainment interval. Sustainment Interval is relevant when an individual or collective event is not observed and evaluated within the sustainment period, has atrophied, and therefore retraining and evaluation is required.

6. **Billet/MOS.** Each individual training event will contain a billet code and/or MOS that designates who is responsible for performing that event and any corresponding formal course required for that billet. Each commander has the flexibility to shift responsibilities based on the organization of his command. These codes are based on recommendations from the collective subject matter expertise that developed this manual and are listed for each event.

7. **Grade.** The Grade field indicates the rank at which Marines are required to complete the event.

8. **Description.** This field allows T&R developers to include an explanation of event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge, i.e., engage fixed target with crew-served weapons. This is an optional field for individual events but is required for collective events. This field can be of great value guiding a Formal School or OPFOR unit trying to discern the intent behind an event that might not be readily apparent.

9. **Condition.** Condition refers to the constraints that may affect event performance in a real-world environment. It indicates what is provided (equipment, tools, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints
or conditions under which the task is to be performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.). When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this should be stated. The content of the condition should be included in the event on a "by exception" basis. If there exists an assumption regarding the conditions under which all or most of the events in the Manual will be performed, then only those additional or exceptional items required should be listed in the condition. The common conditions under which all the events in a chapter will be executed will be listed as a separate paragraph at the beginning of the chapter.

10. **Standard.** The performance standard indicates the basis for judging the effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and must be strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events will likely be general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. The standard for individual events will be objective, quantifiable, and readily observable. Standards will more specifically describe to what proficiency level, specified in terms of accuracy, completeness, time required, and sequencing the event is to be accomplished. These guidelines can be summarized in the acronym "ACTS" (Accuracy Completeness Time Sequence). In no cases will "per the reference" or "per/in accordance with commander's intent" be used as a stand-alone standard.

11. **Event Components/Performance Steps.** Description of the actions that the event is composed of, or a list of subordinate, included T&R event and event descriptions. The event components help the user determine what must be accomplished and the proper sequence of execution of subordinate events. Event components are used for collective events; performance steps are used for individual events.

   a. The event components and performance steps will be consciously written so that they may be employed as performance evaluation check lists by the operating forces. They must be sequenced to demonstrate the building block approach to training.

   b. Event components may be events one individual in the unit performs, events that small groups in the unit perform, or events involving the entire unit.

12. **Chained Events.** Enables unit leaders to effectively identify prerequisite, supporting, and supported events that ultimately support MCTs/METs. Supported events are chained to supporting events to enable the accomplishment of the supported event to standard and therefore are considered "chained". The completion of identified supported events can be utilized to update sustainment interval credit for supporting events, based on the assessment of the commander.

13. **Prerequisite Events.** Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission
accomplishment.

14. **Supported Event.** An event whose performance is inherently supported by the performance of one or more supporting events. A supported event will be classified as internal supported if it has been developed specifically for the community. A supported event that has been chained to an event from an external community T&R will be classified as external supported.

15. **Supporting Event.** An event whose performance inherently supports the performance of a supported event. A supporting event will be classified as internal supporting if it has been developed specifically for the community. A supporting event that has been chained to a community event from an external community T&R will be classified as external supporting.

16. **Initial Training Setting.** All individual events will designate the setting at which the skill is first taught, either formally, MOJT within the OPFOR, or via a distance learning product (DL).

17. **References.** The training references shall be utilized to determine task performance steps. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. T&R Manuals are designed to be a training outline, not to replicate or replace doctrinal publications, reference publications or technical manuals. References are key to developing detailed lesson plans, determining grading criteria, and ensuring standardization of training. For individual events only one authoritative reference is required.

18. **Distance Learning Products.** Distance learning products include: Individual Multimedia Instruction (IMI), Computer-Based Training (CBT), MarineNet, etc. This notation is included when, in the opinion of the TRMG in consultation with the MTESD representative, the event can be taught via one of these media vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

19. **Support Requirements.** This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. This is a key section in the overall T&R effort, as resources will eventually be tied directly to the training towards METT. Future efforts to attain and allocate resources will be based on the requirements outlined in the T&R Manual. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area
- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials
- Other Units/Personnel

The ordnance requirements for one year of training for the events in the T&R will be aggregated into a table contained in an appendix to the T&R. The task analyst and the occupational field representatives will be careful not to "double count" ammunition that might be employed in the performance of individual and collective events that are chained.

20. **Suitability of Simulation/Simulators/DL products.** The following "Suitability and Sequence" codes listed in Figure 1-5 have been developed to communicate characteristics for employing simulations during training. Units
of measure have been assigned based on the amount of time it takes a Marine or unit to train to task utilizing a particular simulator. Suitability and Sequence codes are captured in the event title in a parenthetical remark, as well as within the simulation field of the T&R event. The simulation field also identifies the type of simulation, units of measure, and any other pertinent information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>The event can only be trained to standard in a Live environment. Any event assessed as &quot;NO&quot; for Simulatable was coded &quot;L.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>The event must be performed to standard in simulator as a PREREQUISITE to live fire qualification as per current policy, T&amp;R manual, or doctrine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>Event must be trained to standard in simulation then live unless simulation capacity is not available, then live only training is appropriate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L/S</td>
<td>Event must be trained to standard in a live environment then simulation unless simulation capacity is not available, then live only training is appropriate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Event can ONLY be conducted to standard and qualification in simulator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 1-5: Suitability and Sequence codes

a. Training simulation capabilities offer an opportunity to build and sustain proficiency while achieving and/or maintaining certain economies. Commanders should take into consideration simulation tools as a matter of course when designing training.

b. Simulation Terms:

1. Simulation: A model of a system animated discretely or continuously over a period of time. A simulation may be closed-loop (i.e., it executes based on initial inputs without human intervention), or it may be open-loop (i.e., human input to alter the variables in the system during execution is allowed). A simulation is an approximation of how the modeled system will behave over time. Simulations are constructed based on verified and validated mathematical models of actual systems. Simulations can be very simple or complex depending on the degree of fidelity and resolution needed to understand the behavior of a system.

2. Simulator: A simulator is the physical apparatus employed as the interface for humans to interact with a model or observe its output. A simulator has input controls and outputs in the form of human sensory stimuli (visual, auditory, olfactory, tactile/haptic, and taste). For instance, some of the features of the vehicle cab (the seat, steering wheel, turn signals, accelerator pedal, brakes, and windshield) and projection screen. Both the vehicle cab and projection screen are the interface by which a human being interacts with the simulated environment of a driving a vehicle and observe the outputs of the mathematical models of vehicle dynamics.

3. Model: A mathematical representation of the behavior (i.e., shows the behavior of projectiles, combat simulations, etc.) of a system at a distinct point in time.

4. Live: Real people operates real systems to include both live
people operating real platforms or systems on a training range and battle staffs from joint, component or service tactical headquarters using real world C2 systems.

(5) Virtual: Real people operating simulated systems. Virtual simulations inject humans-in-the-loop in a central role by exercising motor control skills (e.g., flying an air platform simulator, engaging targets in indoor simulated marksmanship trainer), decision skills, and/or communication skills.

(6) Constructive: Models and simulations that involve simulated people operating simulated systems (i.e., MAGTF Tactical Warfare Simulation). Real people make inputs to such simulations, but are not involved in determining the outcomes.

(7) Live, Virtual and Constructive Training Environment: Defined by combining any of the three training domains (LVC) to create a common operational environment, by which units can interact across LVC domains as though they are physically located in the same operational environment.

(8) Distance Learning: Any instruction and evaluation provided through a variety of distance learning delivery systems (i.e., MarineNet) where the students and instructors are separated by time and/or location.

c. Figure 1-6 depicts an event title with simulation code and simulation and/or simulators that can be used, as displayed within a T&R event.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XXXX-XXX-XXXX:</th>
<th>Call for indirect fire using the grid method (L/S)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMULATION EVALUATION:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L/S</td>
<td>ODS</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 1-6: Example of Simulation/Simulators displayed within a T&R event

21. Miscellaneous

a. This field provides space for any additional information that will assist in the planning and execution of the event. Units and FLCS are cautioned not to disregard this information or to consider the information of lesser importance than what is contained in other parts of the T&R event. Miscellaneous fields provide an opportunity for the drafters of the T&R event to communicate vital information that might not fit neatly into any other available field. The list may include, but is not limited to:

- Admin Instructions
- Special Personnel Certifications
- Equipment Operating Hours
- Road Miles
1007. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP)

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a "Combat Readiness Percentage" as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.

2. CRP is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.

3. Unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called "Evaluation-Coded" (E-Coded) Events. E-Coded Events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.

1008. CRP CALCULATION

1. Collective training begins at the 3000-level (team, crew or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. E-Coded collective events are the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has four E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

- MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
- MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)
- MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
- MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
- MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:
3. CRP is a valuable tool to assist commanders in readiness reporting by providing objective data to support and inform their subjective assessment.

1009. CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR TRAINING

1. All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in CBRN defense in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive CBRN attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in a CBRN environment.

2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in a CBRN environment, CBRN training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under CBRN conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

1010. NIGHT TRAINING

1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force are capable of performing their assigned mission in "every clime and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.

2. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train under the conditions of limited visibility. Units should strive to conduct all events in this T&R Manual during both day and night/limited visibility conditions. When there is limited training time available, night training should take precedence over daylight training, contingent on the availability of equipment and personnel.

1011. RISK MANAGEMENT (RM)

1. RM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a tool to aid decision making used by Marines at all levels to increase effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of success. RM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.

2. All leaders and Marines will integrate risk management in the planning process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the RM process will reduce mishaps, injuries, and damage they cause, thereby increasing both individual performance and unit readiness. RM assists the commander in avoiding unnecessary risk, determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, making an informed decision to implement a course of action (COA),
identifying feasible and effective control measures, adjusting training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Marines/Sailors, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment.

3. Specifically, Commanders are required to implement and document deliberate risk management in the planning and execution of all training evolutions and activities. Furthermore, the authority to approve or accept Risk Assessment Code (RAC) 1 or 2 hazards will not be delegated below Lieutenant Colonel (O5). Further guidance for RM is found in Marine Corps Order 3500.27_.

1012. IMPROVISED EXPLOSIVE TRAINING

1. Improvised Explosive Device (IED) threat impacts all elements of the MAGTF and all Marines regardless of military occupational specialty, location, or operational environment. The ability to effectively operate and survive in environments with an IED threat is critical to force protection, maintaining combat effectiveness, and mission accomplishment.

2. Per Marine Corps Policy on Organizing, Training, and Equipping for Operations in an IED Environment (MCO 3502.9), Marines must be capable of not only accomplishing their assigned mission, but also accomplishing their mission in environments with an IED threat. Counter-Improvised Explosive Device (C-IED) training must be integrated into the unit training plan IOT ensure personnel assigned to the Operating Forces train and maintain proficiency in C-IED tactics, techniques, and procedures.

1013. MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS

1. This T&R Manual contains MOS-specific physical standards, which must be demonstrated, in order to achieve MOS qualification. These MOS-specific physical standards have been identified throughout this T&R Manual within the administrative instructions to the event.

2. Assessments for MOS-specific physical standards have been developed and are contained within Appendix G. These assessments provide Commanders reasonable assurance that a Marine has the physical capacity to perform the regularly assigned and recurrent duties of the MOS.

3. These MOS-specific physical standards are not the sole requirement for MOS qualification.
# Chapter 2

## Mission Essential Tasks Matrix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paragraph</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV Mission Essential Task List (METL)</td>
<td>2000 2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV Core Mission Essential Tasks</td>
<td>2001 2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV MET-Supporting E-Coded Events</td>
<td>2002 2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV BN Core MET Matrix</td>
<td>2003 2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Corps Task Description</td>
<td>2004 2-9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

2000. AAV MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST (METL). The MET table lists the
standardized core METs for units within the Assault Amphibian community.

2001. AAV CORE MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MCT 1.1.2</th>
<th>Provide Forces</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MCT 1.4.1.1</td>
<td>Conduct Breaching Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCT 1.6.1</td>
<td>Conduct Offensive Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCT 1.6.4</td>
<td>Conduct Defensive Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCT 1.12.1</td>
<td>Conduct Amphibious Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCT 5.3.2</td>
<td>Establish Means for Command and Control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2002. AAV MET-SUPPORTING E-CODED EVENTS

The AAV MET-Supporting E-Coded Events table lists the E-Coded collective T&R
events that support the core METs identified in table 2001. These E-Coded T&R
events form the basis for unit readiness planning per reference (d),
identifying subordinate collective and individual training events through the
supporting/chained relationships described in each event.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MCT 1.1.2 Provide Forces</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-7002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-6002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-5002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MCT 1.4.1.1 Conduct Breaching Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CBTS-5001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-7004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-7002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-6001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-5003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-7004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-7002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-6001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-5003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-7004</td>
<td>Command and Control Forces (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-6001</td>
<td>Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-6002</td>
<td>Support Amphibious Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-5002</td>
<td>Support Amphibious Operations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-7004</td>
<td>Command and Control Forces (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-4001</td>
<td>Support Command Section Operations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2003. AAV BN CORE MET MATRIX

MCT 1.1.2 Provide Forces

Conditions

C 2.1.5.1 Lead Time: Moderate (days to weeks)
C 2.1.5.2 Mission Duration: Short (30-90 days), Medium (90-180 days), Long (180-365 days)

Personnel Standards (2d AABn)

>/=1 MEU platoon manned to 100% of MEU T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel

Personnel Standards (3d AABn)

>/=1 AA company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel

>/=1 MEU platoon manned to 100% of MEU T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel

Equipment Standards (2d AABn)

>/=1 MEU platoon with 100% of AAVs ready and available

Equipment Standards (3d AABn)

>/=2 MEU platoon with 100% of AAVs ready and available

>/=1 AA company with 80% of AAVs ready and available

Training Standards (2d & 3d AABn)

Y/N AA battalion trained to standard in AAV-CMDC-7002 Prepare for Deployment

Y/N AA company trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-6002 Support Amphibious Operations

>/=3 AA platoons trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-5002 Support Amphibious Operations

>/=3 AA platoons trained to standard in AAV-TAC-5003 Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L)

>/=3 AA platoons trained to standard in AAV-TAC-5006 Support Defensive Operations (S/L)

Output Standards (2d AABn)

>/=1 AA platoon trained and ready for deployment (MEU Sustainment)

Output Standards (3d AABn)

>/=2 AA platoon trained and ready for deployment (MEU Sustainment)

>/=1 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability

Certification Standards (2d & 3d AABn)

Y/N AA company exercise/event/operation performed within the last 12 months
or since reset from last deployment

### MCT 1.4.1.1 Conduct Breaching Operations

#### Conditions

C 1.3.2.1 Light: Day (overcast day), Negligible (overcast night)

#### Personnel Standards (2d & 3d AABn)

- \(\geq 1\) MCM platoon manned with \(80\%\) of MOS 18XX/21XX qualified, deployable crews

#### Equipment Standards (2d & 3d AABn)

- \(\geq 80\%\) of MCM AAVs ready and available
- \(\geq 80\%\) MK 154 LMC Mod 0 Kits is ready and available

#### Training Standards (2d & 3d AABn)

- Y/N MCM platoon trained to standard in AAV-CBTS-5001 Support a Breach

#### Output Standards (2d & 3d AABn)

- \(\geq 4\) Independent explosively reduced obstacle lanes from the high water mark inland, and during mechanized operations ashore in order to allow unimpeded movement of the surface assault element

#### Certification Standards (2d & 3d AABn)

- Y/N Platoon exercise/event/operation performed within the last 12 months or since reset from last deployment

### MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

#### Conditions

C 1.3.2.1 Light: Day (overcast day), Negligible (overcast night)

#### Personnel Standards (2d AABn)

- \(\geq 1\) AA company manned to \(80\%\) of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
- \(\geq 1\) H&S company manned to \(80\%\) of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel

#### Personnel Standards (3d AABn)

- \(\geq 2\) AA company manned to \(80\%\) of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
- \(\geq 1\) H&S company manned to \(80\%\) of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel

#### Personnel Standards (4th AABn)

- \(\geq 4\) AA company manned to \(80\%\) of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
- \(\geq 1\) H&S company manned to \(80\%\) of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel

#### Equipment Standards (2d AABn)

- \(\geq 1\) AA company with \(80\%\) of AAVs ready and available
- \(\geq 1\) H&S company with \(80\%\) of AAVs ready and available

#### Equipment Standards (3d AABn)

- \(\geq 2\) AA company with \(80\%\) of AAVs ready and available
- \(\geq 1\) H&S company with \(80\%\) of AAVs ready and available

#### Equipment Standards (4th AABn)

- \(\geq 4\) AA company with \(80\%\) of AAVs ready and available
- \(\geq 1\) H&S company with \(80\%\) of AAVs ready and available

#### Training Standards (2d AABn)

- Y/N AA battalion is trained to standard in AAV-CMDC-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L)

- Y/N AA battalion is trained to standard in AAV-CSS-7002 Conduct Recovery
and Evacuation Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Training Standards (3d AABn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA company is trained to standard in AAV-CSS-6001 Employ Company Trains (S/L)</td>
<td>Y/N AA battalion is trained to standard in AAV-CMDC-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-GNRY-5003 Conduct Gun Table XII (L)</td>
<td>Y/N AA battalion is trained to standard in AAV-CSS-7002 Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-GNRY-3009 Conduct Gun Table VI (L)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-TAC-5003 Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Training Standards (4th AABn)                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Y/N AA battalion is trained to standard in AAV-CMDC-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L) | Y/N AA battalion is trained to standard in AAV-CSS-7002 Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations |
| >/\=2 AA companies trained to standard in AAV-CSS-6001 Employ Company Trains (S/L) | >/\=4 AA companies trained to standard in AAV-CSS-6001 Employ Company Trains (S/L) |
| Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-GNRY-5003 Conduct Gun Table XII (L) | Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-GNRY-5003 Conduct Gun Table XII (L) |
| Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-GNRY-3009 Conduct Gun Table VI (L) | Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-GNRY-3009 Conduct Gun Table VI (L) |
| Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-TAC-5003 Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L) | Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-TAC-5003 Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L) |

| Output Standards (2d AABn)                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| >/=1 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support offensive operations | |

| Output Standards (3d AABn)                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| >/=2 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support offensive operations | |

| Output Standards (4th AABn)                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| >/=4 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support offensive operations | |

| Certification Standards (2d, 3d & 4th AABn)                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Y/N Battalion exercise/event/operation performed within the last 12 months or since reset from last deployment | MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations |

| Conditions                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| C 1.3.2.1 Light: Day (overcast day), Negligible (overcast night) | |

| Personnel Standards (2d AABn)                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Personel Standards (3d AABn) | >=1 AA company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel |
| Personel Standards (4th AABn) | >=1 H&S company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel |

| Equipment Standards (2d AABn) | >=1 AA company with 80% of AAVs ready and available |
| Equipment Standards (3d AABn) | >=1 H&S company with 80% of AAVs ready and available |

<p>| Training Standards (2d AABn) | Y/N AA battalion is trained to standard in AAV-CMDC-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L) |
| Training Standards (3d AABn) | Y/N AA battalion is trained to standard in AAV-CSS-7002 Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations |
| Training Standards (4th AABn) | Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-TAC-5006 Support Defensive Operations (S/L) |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control Forces (S/L)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA battalion is trained to standard in AAV-CSS-7002 Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=4 AA companies trained to standard in AAV-CSS-6001 Employ Company Trains (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-GNRY-5003 Conduct Gun Table XII (L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-GNRY-3009 Conduct Gun Table VI (L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA platoon is trained to standard in AAV-TAC-5006 Support Defensive Operations (S/L)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output Standards (2d AABn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=1 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support defensive operations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output Standards (3d AABn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=2 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support defensive operations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output Standards (4th AABn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=4 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support defensive operations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Certification Standards (2d, 3d &amp; 4th AABn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y/N Battalion exercise/event/operation performed within the last 12 months or since reset from last deployment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C 1.2 Sea: Open, littoral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C 1.2.1.3 Sea State: Calm to slight (Beaufort Force &lt; 5, Sea State 3 or less, seas 4 ft or less) Moderate (Beaufort Force 5, Sea State 4, seas 4-8 ft)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C 1.3.2.1 Light: Day (overcast day), Negligible (overcast night)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C 1.2.4 Littoral Characteristics: Moderate (moderate grades, currents some obstacles) Mild (gentle natural factors no obstacles)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Personnel Standards (2d AABn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=1 AA company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=1 H&amp;S company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Personnel Standards (3d AABn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=2 AA company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=1 H&amp;S company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Personnel Standards (4th AABn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=4 AA company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=1 H&amp;S company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equipment Standards (2d AABn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=1 AA company with 80% of AAVs ready and available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=1 H&amp;S company with 80% of AAVs ready and available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equipment Standards (3d AABn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Equipment Standards (4th AABn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training Standards (2d AABn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA battalion trained to standard in AAV-CMDC-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=1 AA company trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-6001 Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=1 AA company trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-6002 Support Amphibious Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA platoon trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-5002 Support Amphibious Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training Standards (3d AABn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA battalion trained to standard in AAV-CMDC-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=2 AA companies trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-6001 Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=2 AA companies trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-6002 Support Amphibious Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA platoon trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-5002 Support Amphibious Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training Standards (4th AABn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA battalion trained to standard in AAV-CMDC-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=4 AA companies trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-6001 Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=4 AA companies trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-6002 Support Amphibious Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA platoon trained to standard in AAV-AMPH-5002 Support Amphibious Operations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Output Standards (2d AABn)
  >=1 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support amphibious operations

Output Standards (3d AABn)
  >=2 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support amphibious operations

Output Standards (4th AABn)
  >=4 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support amphibious operations

Certification Standards (2d, 3d & 4th AABn)
  Y/N Battalion exercise/event/operation performed within the last 12 months or since reset from last deployment

MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control Conditions
  C 1.3.2.1 Light: Day (overcast day), Negligible (overcast night)
  Personnel Standards (2d AABn)
  >=8 AA crews manned with qualified, deployable personnel

Personnel Standards (3d & 4th AABn)
>/=12 AA crews manned with qualified, deployable personnel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Equipment Standards (2d AABn)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=4 AAVC7 RAM/RS ready and available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=4 AAVP7 RAM/RS ready and available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Equipment Standards (3d &amp; 4th AABn)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=6 AAVC7 RAM/RS ready and available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=6 AAVP7 RAM/RS ready and available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Training Standards (2d AABn)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA battalion trained to standard in AAV-CMDC-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Training Standards (3d &amp; 4th AABn)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y/N AA battalion trained to standard in AAV-CMDC-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Output Standards (2d AABn)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=2 Maneuver headquarters provided platform for establishing and maintaining tactical control of forces during amphibious and mechanized operations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Output Standards (3d &amp; 4th AABn)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;/=3 Maneuver headquarters provided platform for establishing and maintaining tactical control of forces during amphibious and mechanized operations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Certification Standards (2d, 3d &amp; 4th AABn)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y/N Battalion exercise/event/operation performed within the last 12 months or since reset from last deployment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2004. **MARINE CORPS TASK DESCRIPTION**

Below are the descriptions of each Marine Corps Task assigned to the AAV community.

**MCT 1.1.2 Provide Forces.** To generate small units and detachments, below the battalion/squadron level, for deployment in support of requests for forces or capabilities (RFFs/RFCs). Force requirements include, but are not limited to, enablers to Marine Expeditionary Units, Special Purpose MAGTFs, the Unit Deployment Program (UDP), advisor teams, and transition teams. Deploying units and detachments are trained, assessed, and certified in their readiness to execute their assigned missions.

**MCT 1.4.1.1 Conduct Breaching Operations.** A breaching operation is an operation conducted to allow maneuver despite the presence of obstacles. It is a synchronized combined arms operation under the control of the maneuver commander which involves actions to detect, neutralize (by combined arms breach or bypass), mark, and proof mined areas and obstacles. Combined arms breaching operations are typically performed in a close combat environment. Breaching operations begin when friendly forces detect an obstacle and begin to apply the breaching fundamentals, and they end when battle handover has occurred between the unit conducting the breach and follow-on forces. A
breaching operation generally requires significant combat engineering support to accomplish.

**MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations.** Take the initiative, gain freedom of action to allow swift transition from one action to another and to put the enemy at risk throughout the depth and space of the battlespace. Defeat, destroy or neutralize the enemy force by taking the fight to the enemy in such a way as to achieve victory at least cost.

**MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations.** Take action to defeat an enemy attack. Buy time, to hold a piece of key terrain, to facilitate other operations, to preoccupy the enemy in one area so friendly forces can attack him in another, or to erode enemy resources at a rapid rate while reinforcing friendly operations.

**MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations.** To conduct a military operation launched from the sea by an amphibious force, embarked in ships or craft with the primary purpose of introducing a landing force ashore to accomplish the assigned mission. Types of amphibious operations include assaults, withdrawals, demonstrations, raids, and other amphibious operations in a permissive, uncertain, or hostile environment.

**MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control.** To establish and provide controls and procedures for command and tactical movement of forces in a way that permits a commander to move his force quickly, securely, and efficiently. To take into account the size of units and related time and space factors. To pass on multiple routes at a designated speed, organized in serial march units; establish jamming teams and liaison parties; and move tactical command post before main body to synchronize and coordinate movement, etc. Control is established to ensure the commander flexibility to deploy his force as necessary for tactical purposes. This task includes prepositioning operations.
ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 3
BATTALION & COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAGRAPH</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PURPOSE</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING</td>
<td>3001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES</td>
<td>3002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/ CORE CAPABILITY</td>
<td>3003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS</td>
<td>3004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATTALION LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>3005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPANY LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>3006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains the Battalion and Company-level Assault Amphibian unit events, and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies METs and unit training (Collective Events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

3001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AAV" indicating that the event is for units in the AAV Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Battalion and Company level are:

   AMPH - Amphibious Operations
   CBTS - Combat Support
   CMDC - Command and Control
   CSS - Combat Service Support
   TAC - Tactical Operations

   c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

3002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

3003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Assault Amphibian Battalion. The mission of the Assault Amphibian Battalion is to conduct amphibious and mechanized operations in order to support the ground combat element (GCE) with maneuver, fires, force protection, and command and control. The Assault Amphibian Battalion provides the GCE with the general support lift, staff expertise, and
command and control assets to plan and execute amphibious forcible entry and subsequent mechanized operations ashore. The Assault Amphibian Battalion has units of scalable capability, task organized to support each echelon of the GCE from company to regiment. The Battalion is comprised of subordinate Assault Amphibian Companies and a Headquarters and Service company. The Assault Amphibian Battalion augments the Assault Amphibian Company's organic logistics capability by providing personnel, medical, resupply, and overflow second and third echelon maintenance.

a. Conduct amphibious operations.
b. Conduct mechanized operations.
c. Provide staff and command and control assets to plan and execute mechanized operations.
d. Conduct combat service support operations.
e. Conduct mechanized breaching support.
f. Conduct operations in a CBRN environment.

2. Assault Amphibian Company. The mission of the Assault Amphibian Company is to conduct amphibious and mechanized operations in order to support the GCE with maneuver, fires, force protection, and command and control. The Assault Amphibian Company provides the GCE with the general support lift, staff expertise, and command and control assets to plan and execute amphibious forcible entry and subsequent mechanized operations ashore. The Assault Amphibian Company has units of scalable capability, task organized to support echelons of the GCE from company to battalion. The Assault Amphibian Company consists of three Assault Amphibian Platoons, a Headquarters Platoon, and a Maintenance Platoon or detachment. The Company Commander functions as a special staff officer to the supported unit in AAV employment in addition to commanding the company.

a. Conduct amphibious operations.
b. Conduct mechanized operations.
c. Conduct offensive operations.
d. Conduct defensive operations.
e. Conduct operations in a CBRN environment.

3. Assault Amphibian Headquarters and Service (H&S) Company. The mission of the Headquarters and Service Company is to provide the Battalion Commander the means to train, maintain, prepare and sustain subordinate units in order to support the GCE with maneuver, fires, force protection, and command and control. Through its subordinate platoons and sections, the H&S Company provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply and other service support functions to the AA battalion.

a. Conduct combat service support operations in support of the Assault Amphibian Battalion.
b. Provide higher echelon support of maintenance to the Assault Amphibian Companies.
c. Provide command and control infrastructure for the Assault Amphibian Battalion Staff.
d. Conduct rear area security for the Assault Amphibian Battalion Support Area.
e. Conduct operations in a CBRN environment.
f. Participate in convoy operations.
3004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>E-Coded</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>7000 Level Events</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-7001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)</td>
<td>3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-7001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Provide Alert Forces</td>
<td>3-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-7002</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Prepare for Deployment</td>
<td>3-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-7003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Plan for Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>3-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-7004</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Command and Control Forces (S/L)</td>
<td>3-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-7005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manage Unit Training and Readiness</td>
<td>3-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-7001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Battalion Support Area Operations</td>
<td>3-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-7002</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations</td>
<td>3-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6000 Level Events</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-6001</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)</td>
<td>3-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-6002</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Support Amphibious Operations</td>
<td>3-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-6003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Surf Survival</td>
<td>3-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-6001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manage Unit Training and Readiness</td>
<td>3-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-6002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Plan for Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>3-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-6001</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Employ Company Trains (S/L)</td>
<td>3-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-6002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Recovery/Battle Damage Assessment and Repair</td>
<td>3-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-6003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support Casualty Evacuation Operations</td>
<td>3-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-6004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Occupy an Assembly Area</td>
<td>3-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-6001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support Mechanized Infantry Offensive Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>3-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-6002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support Mechanized Infantry Defensive Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>3-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-6003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support a Retrograde</td>
<td>3-21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3005. BATTALION LEVEL EVENTS

**AAV-AMPH-7001**: Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S)**: MCT 1.12.1

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a planning directive/warning order.

**STANDARD**: To support the concept of operations within the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:

1. Assist in the planning process.
2. Recommend Landing Beach/Landing Area for Commander Landing Force/Commander Amphibious Task Force approval.
3. Interpret intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance, to include hydrographic surveys.
4. Assist in the integration of the landing plan with the scheme of maneuver and supporting plans.
5. Assist in developing the operation plan, embarkation plan, debarkation plan and landing plan.
6. Provide input for the development of the approach schedule.
7. Provide embarkation data.
8. Assist in production of serial assignment tables and Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table (LCAVAT) documents.
9. Advise conduct of rehearsals, inspections and unit brief-backs.
10. Coordinate and liaise with Navy and Marine planning staffs.

REFERENCES:
1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation
3. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
4. MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
5. MCTP 3-31A Supporting Arms Coordination in Amphibious Operations
6. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
7. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
AAV-AMPH-6001
AAV-CMDC-6002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>MTWS</td>
<td>Unit Hours</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AAV-CMDC-7001: Provide Alert Forces

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An important type of Special Purpose MAGTF is the Air Contingency Force (ACF). An ACF is an on-call, task-organized alert force that is maintained by all three Marine Expeditionary Forces (MEF). It can be dispatched virtually worldwide to respond to a rapidly developing crisis. The ACF is the MEF's force is readiness. It can deploy independently or in conjunction with amphibious forces, MPFs, or other expeditionary forces.

CONDITION: Given an order from higher headquarters and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To deploy in response to a rapidly developing crisis.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Review the concept of operations/operations plan to determine specific transportation requirements.
2. Identify Time-Phased Force Deployment Data (TPFDD) requirements to higher headquarters.
3. Formulate an embarkation plan with level 4 data (weight and dimensions).
4. Forecast lift requirements.
5. Provide input regarding Force Deployment Planning and Execution (FDP&E).
6. Submit transportation requirements to higher headquarters.
7. Disseminate a movement schedule to the appropriate units.
8. Supervise embarkation/movement to staging area.
9. Support deployment and distribution planning through the use of automated information systems.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 13-10C Unit Embarkation Handbook
2. MCTP 13-10D Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
3. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
4. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: AAV-CMDC-6002

AAV-CMDC-7002: Prepare for Deployment

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Expeditionary Operations consist of MEU, UDP, MEB level operations and, as required, other directed operations.

CONDITION: Given a task-organized battalion.

STANDARD: To provide personnel and/or equipment capable of executing required mission essential tasks.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Identify/Stabilize personnel.
3. Identify logistical requirements.
4. Conduct pre-deployment training.
5. Conduct pre/post personnel turnover inspections.
6. Conduct pre/post deployment health services.
7. Conduct pre/post equipment turnover inspections.
8. As required, identify ADVON/RBE leaders and personnel.
9. Transfer administrative control to gaining unit.
10. Transfer equipment to gaining unit.
11. Transfer operational control to gaining unit (CHOP).

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3120.13 Policy for Marine Expeditionary Unit
2. MCRP 1-10.1 Organization of the United States Marine Corps
3. MCTP 13-10C Unit Embarkation Handbook
4. MCTP 13-10D Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
5. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-VOPS-1009 1833-VOPS-2007 AAV-CMDC-6002
AAV-CMDC-7003: Plan for Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
- MCT 1.12.1
- MCT 1.4.1.1
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4
- MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The process that develops an order to direct actions and focus subordinate activities toward accomplishing the mission.

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters operation order, commander's guidance, and a battle staff.

STANDARD: To communicate the commander's intent, guidance, and decisions in a clear, useful form that is easily understood by those who must execute the order.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Determine planning process (Campaign, MCPP, R2P2, Hasty Planning, or other method).
2. Determine time available.
3. Establish timeline for planning and preparation.
4. Issue warning order.
5. Conduct operational planning team (OPT).
6. Implement cultural considerations into mission planning.
7. Create orders (OPORD, FRAGO, Decision Support Tools, etc.).
8. Issue orders.
9. Implement feedback mechanisms.
10. Coordinate planning with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting units.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics
2. MCWP 3-30 Marine Air-Ground Task Force Command and Control
3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-CMDC-2006  1833-CMDC-2007  AAV-CMDC-6002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATION EVALUATION:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIMULATED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AAV-CMDC-7004: Command and Control Forces (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4
MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The AA Bn Commander will exercise authority and direction over assigned forces, advise the supported unit commander on how best to employ AAVs, and coordinate with adjacent AA units during operations. This provides that the AA Bn is prepared to augment or support with a staff that is knowledgeable of the conditions and processes associated with maneuvering and maintaining armored vehicles in support of the mission.

CONDITION: Given a Headquarters and Service Company, command and control assets, support equipment, and a supported-supporting command relationship.

STANDARD: To support decisive action tasks while integrating organic systems and processes.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Establish a Command Post.
2. Organize staff sections into mobile echelons to support personnel, battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR), transportation, engineering, and health services/casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) operations.
3. Establish Jump procedures.
4. Advise best position of mobile echelons for effective C2, mobility and survivability.
5. Direct/coordinate current operations.
6. Track Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCIRs).
7. Maintain status of available resources.
8. Assist fire support planning as required.
9. Augment Administration and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC).
10. Communicate with Higher, Adjacent, Subordinate, and Supporting (HASS) units.
11. Provide mission command systems.
12. Assist in maintaining continuity of operations as well as the Common Operational Picture (COP).
13. Participate in local security as required.
14. Make recommendations to the commander.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 4-90 Brigade Support Battalion
2. MCDP 6 Command and Control
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-CMDC-1005  1803-SUPT-1002  1803-TAC-2001
1833-CMDC-2004  1833-TAC-2004  AAV-CMDC-6002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:
**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** CAPSET 4 or CAST trainer can be used to train this task.

**AAV-CMDC-7005:** Manage Unit Training and Readiness

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.1.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a higher headquarters approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and Commander's Training Guidance.

**STANDARD:** To provide personnel trained for combat operations by implementing unit readiness planning.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Develop METL.
2. Identify collective training standards.
3. Define unit proficiency standards.
4. Develop the training strategy.
5. Develop the Commander's Training Guidance.
6. Develop a mid-range training plan.
7. Develop a short-range training plan.
8. Develop weekly training schedules.
10. Coordinate unit training.
11. Develop training materials.
15. Conduct formal/informal training evaluations.
16. Conduct after action reviews.
17. Assess unit Mission Essential Task (MET) proficiency.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCO 3500.27 Risk Management (RM)
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** AAV-CMDC-6001
AAV-CSS-7001: Conduct Battalion Support Area Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The Battalion Support Area (BSA) provides logistics support to AA units.

CONDITION: Given an order from higher headquarters and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To maintain sustainability of Assault Amphibian units.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Develop concept of supply and sustainment.
2. Identify shortfalls and acceptable alternatives.
3. Task-organize.
4. Develop transportation, logistics packages and movement plans.
5. Position consideration.
6. Conduct site survey.
7. Occupy Battalion Support Area.
8. Establish local security and guard forces.
10. Establish maintenance facility.
11. Conduct recovery, replacement and evacuation operations.
12. Establish health, food and religious services.
13. Coordinate company trains.
14. Prepare for follow-on operations.
15. Conduct displacement.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-96 Brigade Combat Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
5. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations
6. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
AAV-CMDC-6002  AAV-CSS-6001  AAV-CSS-6002
AAV-CSS-6003  AAV-CSS-6004

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-CSS-7002: Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
CONDITION: Given a scenario, equipment and personnel, and a support area.

STANDARD: To return the material to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation, or disposal.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Provide condition, location and circumstances of damage.
2. Coordinate and dispatch contact team or battle damage assessment and repair assets.
3. Recover and repair equipment.
4. Destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
5. Provide updates to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
4. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
AAV-CSS-6001 AAV-CSS-6002 AAV-CSS-6003

3006. COMPANY LEVEL EVENTS

AAV-AMPH-6001: Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a planning directive/warning order.

STANDARD: To support the concept of operations within the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist/advise the supported unit throughout the planning process.
2. Formulate information requirements and recommend Priority Intelligence Requirements (PIRs) for the commander.
3. Coordinate and liaise with Navy and Marine planning staffs.
4. Assist with developing the landing plan.
5. Assist with developing the Landing Craft And Vehicle Assignment Table (LCAVAT), Serial Assignment Tables, and the embarkation plan.
6. Conduct rehearsals, inspections, and unit brief-backs.

REFERENCES:
1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation
3. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
4. MCTP 3-10A Marine Infantry Battalion
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** AAV-AMPH-7001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>MTWS</td>
<td>Unit Hours</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

**AAV-AMPH-6002:** Support Amphibious Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.12.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given an order from higher headquarters, commander's intent, and amphibious shipping.

**STANDARD:** To conduct an operation launched from the sea by naval and landing forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Assist in the planning process.
2. Conduct embarkation of amphibious shipping.
3. Conduct rehearsals.
4. Execute ship-to-shore movement.
5. Assist in phasing control ashore.
6. Execute scheme of maneuver.

**REFERENCES:**
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3 Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-7306

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
AAV-AMPH-5001 AAV-AMPH-5002 AAV-AMPH-5003
AAV-AMPH-5004 AAV-AMPH-5005 AAV-AMPH-5006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**
**ORNAMENTAL:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 signal per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 signal per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.

---

**AAV-AMPH-6003:** Conduct Surf Survival

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.12.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Completion of this task is designed to build confidence of unit and its leaders, while also ensuring accountability and the ability to negotiate a surf zone in the event of a vehicle evacuation/egress at sea.

**CONDITION:** Given an Assault Amphibian unit, AAVs 500m beyond the surf zone, and personal floatation devices.

**STANDARD:** To have evacuated personnel negotiate the surf zone.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct planning and coordination.
2. Conduct risk management.
3. Supervise and facilitate the evacuated personnel's swim to shore.

**REFERENCES:**
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. NTTP 3-59.3 Naval Amphibious Surf Manual

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1803-AMPH-1003  1833-AMPH-2002  AAV-AMPH-5001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Safety boats.

**UNITS/PERSOENNEL:** Sufficient MCIWS/WSA safety swimmers IAW MCO 1500.52_.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Sustainment Interval for the Reserve Component is 36 months.
AAV-CMDC-6001: Manage Unit Training and Readiness

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and Commanders Training Guidance.

STANDARD: To provide personnel trained for combat operations by implementing unit readiness planning.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Determine unit proficiency.
2. Develop short-range training plan in concert with battalion annual training plan/TEEP.
3. Coordinate unit training.
4. Develop, procure, and/or request training materials.
5. Conduct risk management.
6. Publish planned training events.
7. Conduct training.
8. Conduct evaluation of training.
9. Conduct/submit after action reviews.
10. Conduct training assessment.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27 Risk Management (RM)
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-TRNG-1001 1803-TRNG-1002 1803-TRNG-1003

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-CMDC-7005

AAV-CMDC-6002: Plan for Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1 MCT 1.4.1.1 MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4 MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The process that develops an order to direct actions and focus subordinate activities toward accomplishing the mission.

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters operation order, commander's guidance, and key staff.

STANDARD: To communicate the commander's intent, guidance, and decisions in
a clear, useful form that is easily understood by those who must execute the order.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
2. Determine planning process (MCPP, R2P2, Hasty Planning, or other method).
3. Determine time available.
4. Establish timeline for planning and preparation.
5. Issue warning order.
6. Implement cultural considerations into mission planning.
7. Create orders (OPORD, FRAGO, Decision Support Tools, etc.).
8. Issue orders.
9. Implement feedback mechanisms.
10. Coordinate planning with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting units.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics
2. MCWP 3-30 Marine Air-Ground Task Force Command and Control
3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** AAV-CMDC-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** AAV-CMDC-7003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATION EVALUATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIMULATED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AAV-CSS-6001:** Employ Company Trains (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given an AA unit engaged in tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** To distribute supplies, provide recovery, or evacuate casualties.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Determine the combat service support (CSS) requirements.
2. Task-organize the company trains.
3. Install litter kit, as required.
4. Issue orders.
5. Control movement in conjunction with the concept of operations and tactical situation.
8. Conduct recovery and evacuation operations if needed.
9. Conduct replenishment/support CASEVAC plan.
10. Maintain continuity of operations.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 4-90 Brigade Support Battalion
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
4. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations
5. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
AAV-CSS-5001  AAV-CSS-5002  AAV-CSS-5003

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-CSS-7001  AAV-CSS-7002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>CCS</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AAV-CSS-6002: Conduct Recovery/Battle Damage Assessment and Repair

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a scenario, equipment and personnel, and a support area.

STANDARD: To return the material to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation, or disposal.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Organize recovery and/or battle damage and repair assets.
2. Identify circumstance, type, and location of equipment to be recovered/repaid.
3. Coordinate and dispatch contact team or battle damage assessment and repair assets.
4. Repair, recover, or remove equipment from the battlefield.
5. When directed, destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
6. Provide updates to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
5. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1803-SUPT-1005 1833-SUPT-2003  AAV-CSS-5002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

AAV-CSS-7001  AAV-CSS-7002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**AAV-CSS-6003:** Support Casualty Evacuation Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.12.1  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:**  NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**  6 months

**CONDITION:** Given injured personnel and an air or ground platform capable of conducting a CASEVAC.

**STANDARD:** To treat, evacuate, and track casualties in a timely manner with minimal interruption of operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. If able, casualty applies self-aid.
2. If in direct contact with the enemy, utilize suppression and smoke to allow for movement to the casualty.
3. Marines apply buddy aid to the injured.
4. Evacuate friendly and enemy Wounded In Action (WIA) and Killed In Action (KIA) to Casualty Collection Point (CCP), while taking reasonable measures to safeguard casualties.
5. Weapons, serialized gear, and Personnel Protective Equipment (PPE) are handled and accounted for in accordance with unit Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs).
6. Wounded enemy combatants are safeguarded/escorted as required.
7. Unit corpsmen conduct triage at CCP, and advise company leadership on evacuation priorities and numbers.
8. Conduct coordination with higher headquarters for evacuation.
9. Begin casualty reporting and tracking immediately after an individual is wounded, starting at the lowest level and terminating at higher headquarters.
10. In accordance with SOPs, civilian casualties are either evacuated through military system, or coordination is conducted for treatment by civilian medical personnel/facilities.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-40A.7 Patient Movement
2. MCRP 3-40A.9 First Aid
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:  AAV-CSS-5003

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-CSS-7001  AAV-CSS-7002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:  Air support should be utilized whenever possible to accomplish this task.

AAV-CSS-6004:  Occupy an Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED:  NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:  12 months

CONDITION:  Given a task-organized company, mission, commander's intent, and terrain.

STANDARD:  To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1.  Augment quartering party to find a suitable location for assembly area.
2.  Conduct quartering party actions.
3.  Establish/augment local security.
4.  Establish observation post.
5.  Establish wire communications as needed.
6.  Prepare sketch cards and fire plans.
7.  Cover/conceal positions.
8.  Perform resupply/maintenance operations.

REFERENCES:
1.  ATP 4-90 Brigade Support Battalion
2.  MCTP 3-10A Marine Infantry Battalion
3.  MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4.  MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-TAC-2001  1833-TAC-2004  AAV-TAC-3001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:  AAV-CSS-7001
AAV-TAC-6001: Support Mechanized Infantry Offensive Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: This event is designed for an AA company supporting an infantry unit in support of a MEB Joint Forcible Entry Operation (JFEO). The AA company staff must integrate with higher headquarters. A company (-) minus may be used to accomplish this task.

CONDITION: Given an infantry unit operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, an order from higher headquarters, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To take the initiative from the enemy, gain freedom of action, and generate effects to achieve objectives.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Define command relationship.
2. Advise supported unit commander/S3 on AA unit employment.
3. Conduct planning.
4. Task-organize forces.
5. Prepare for combat (Pre-combat Checks/Pre-combat Inspections).
6. Support maneuver forces.
7. Support organic logistical requirements.
8. Evacuate casualties, as necessary.
9. Consolidate and re-organize upon mission completion.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 1-3 Tactics
4. MCTP 3-10A Marine Infantry Battalion
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
INF-MAN-7001 INF-MAN-7002 INF-MAN-7003
INF-MAN-7004 INF-MAN-7005

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
AAV-CBTS-5001 AAV-TAC-5001 AAV-TAC-5002
AAV-TAC-5003 AAV-TAC-5004 AAV-TAC-5005
AAV-TAC-5009 AAV-TAC-5010

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>CACCTUS</td>
<td>Unit Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
AAV-TAC-6002: Support Mechanized Infantry Defensive Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given an infantry unit operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, an order from higher headquarters, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To force the attacker to reach his culminating point without achieving his objectives and create the opportunity to shift to the offense in accordance with the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Assist in the planning.
2. Task-organize AA unit.
3. Identify and mark primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
5. Identify sectors of fire/fields of fire.
6. Advise on effective employment of weapons systems, safety, and geometry of fires.
7. Produce and submit fire plan sketch in support of supporting unit defensive plan.
8. Rehearse defensive battle drills.
9. Entrench and improve positions/lines of communication, as necessary.
10. Establish alert postures.
11. Conduct continuing actions.
12. Send/receive reports as required.

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 1-3 Tactics
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
- INF-MAN-7101
- INF-MAN-7102
- INF-MAN-7103

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
- AAV-TAC-5001
- AAV-TAC-5002
- AAV-TAC-5004
- AAV-TAC-5006
- AAV-TAC-5007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>CACCTUS</td>
<td>Unit Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3-20  Enclosure (1)
RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-TAC-6003: Support a Retrograde

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Due to the unique characteristics of this type of defense, this
task is separate from Support Mechanized Infantry Defensive Operations.

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To gain time, preserve forces, avoid contact under undesirable
conditions or maneuver the enemy into an unfavorable position.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
3. Plan for alternate or successive delaying actions as required.
4. Break contact, if necessary, from enemy forces.
5. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
6. Adhere to tactical control measures.
7. Maintain security.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
9. Prepare for follow-on operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-96 Brigade Combat Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
INF-MAN-7103 INF-MAN-8101

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: AAV-TAC-5007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
## ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

### CHAPTER 4

**PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paragraph Description</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PURPOSE . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
<td>4001</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
<td>4002</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
<td>4003</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
<td>4004</td>
<td>4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
<td>4005</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Platoon-level Assault Amphibian unit events (5000 Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to platoons and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

4001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AAV" indicating that the event is for units in the AAV Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the platoon level are:

   AMPH - Amphibious Operations  
   GNRY - Gunnery  
   CBST - Combat Support  
   TAC - Tactical Operations  
   CSS - Combat Service Support

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

4002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

4003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Assault Amphibian Platoon. The mission of the AA platoon is to land the surface assault element of the landing force and their equipment in a single lift from assault shipping by amphibious operations to inland objectives, and to conduct mechanized operations and related combat support in subsequent operations ashore. The AA platoon consists of 12 AAVP7A1 and is organized into four sections of three vehicles. The platoon is led by the AA Platoon Commander who directly advises the infantry Company Commander on AAV employment.
a. Provide fire support and maneuverability for supported unit.
b. Conduct amphibious operations.
c. Conduct mechanized operations.
d. Conduct offensive operations.
e. Conduct defensive operations.
f. Employ AA platoon fires.
g. Conduct operations in a CBRN environment.

2. Assault Amphibian Platoon, Mobility/Countermobility. The mission of Mobility/Countermobility (MCM) platoon is to provide breaching capability to the Breach Commander. The AA MCM platoon is composed of 24 AAVP7As with crews, with 12 MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance Systems organized into four sections. The MCM platoon is led by the Platoon Commander who supports the Breach Commander.

a. Conduct breaching operations.
b. Conduct amphibious operations.
c. Conduct mechanized operations.
d. Conduct defensive operations.
e. Employ AA MCM platoon fires.
f. Conduct operations in a CBRN environment.

4004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>E-Coded</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Prepare for Amphibious Operations</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-5002</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Support Amphibious Operations</td>
<td>4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-5003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support an Amphibious Assault</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-5004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support an Amphibious Raid</td>
<td>4-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-5005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support an Amphibious Demonstration</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-5006</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support an Amphibious Withdrawal</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CBTS-5001</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Support a Breach</td>
<td>4-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Plan for Operations</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Resupply</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-5002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Recovery Operations</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-5003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support Casualty Evacuation Operations</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table X (S/L)</td>
<td>4-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-5002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table XI (S/L)</td>
<td>4-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-5003</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table XII (L)</td>
<td>4-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct an Action Drill</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Passage of Lines</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5003</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L)</td>
<td>4-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization</td>
<td>4-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support a Movement to Contact (S/L)</td>
<td>4-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5006</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Support Defensive Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>4-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5007</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support a Retrograde (S/L)</td>
<td>4-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5009</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support Shore-to-Shore Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>4-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-5010</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support Riverine Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>4-25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4005. PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AAV-AMPH-5001: Prepare for Amphibious Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: This is an all-encompassing event designed to highlight major tasks that an AAV platoon must accomplish before entering the water, not necessarily while operating with infantry or amphibious shipping.

CONDITION: Given an AAV platoon and operation order or warning order.

STANDARD: To complete of all required certifications and tasks prior to conducting water operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Task-organize.
4. Conduct planning.
5. Coordinate with Navy and Marine planning staffs as required.
6. Develop concept of support and load plans as required.
7. Produce necessary documents.
8. Integrate plans with supported and adjacent units.
9. Complete pre-water operations checks and inspections.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation
3. JP 3-02.2 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-AMPH-1002  1833-AMPH-1002  1833-AMPH-2001
AAV-AMPH-3001    AAV-AMPH-4002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-AMPH-6002    AAV-AMPH-6003

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
AAV-AMPH-5002: Support Amphibious Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES    SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: This task is the foundation for the conduct of amphibious assaults, raids, demonstrations, withdrawals, and other amphibious operations. For amphibious certification a platoon must conduct a static launch, and underway launch utilizing two of the following methods: parallel, turn-away, angled, parallel U-Turn, and angled U-Turn. One of the three aforementioned launches must be conducted at night.

CONDITION: Given a mission, commander's intent, amphibious shipping, and a requirement to conduct one static and two underway launches.

STANDARD: To land the surface assault elements on time and center beach.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in the planning process.
2. Conduct embarkation of amphibious shipping.
3. Refuel as necessary.
4. Conduct rehearsals.
5. Conduct movement to amphibious operating area.
7. Assist in phasing control ashore.
8. Execute scheme of maneuver.

REFERENCES:
1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-AMPH-1004  1833-AMPH-2003  AAV-AMPH-4001
AAV-AMPH-4003  AAV-AMPH-5001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-AMPH-1006  AAV-AMPH-3004

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-AMPH-6002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.
MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event should be trained to standard without embarked troops before conducting with embarked troops and/or supporting infantry T&R tasks.

AAV-AMPH-5003: Support an Amphibious Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1  MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To land the surface assault elements and conduct operations ashore.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Coordinate with Navy and Marine planning staffs.
2. Conduct planning and task organize.
3. Conduct ship-to-objective/ship-to-shore maneuver.
4. Consolidate forces ashore.
5. Conduct actions on the objective.

REFERENCES:
1. JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
4. MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AAV-AMPH-5001  AAV-AMPH-5002

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
INF-MAN-6301  INF-MAN-7301

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-SUPT-1001  1803-TAC-1005  1833-SUPT-2001
1833-TAC-2005  1833-VOPS-1012  AAV-AMPH-3004
AAV-TAC-4002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-AMPH-6002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.

---

**AAV-AMPH-5004**: Support an Amphibious Raid

**SUPPORTED MET(S)**:
MCT 1.12.1  MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD**: To make a swift incursion into or temporary occupation of an objective followed by a planned withdrawal.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Task-organize for the raid.
2. Conduct ship to objective/ship-to-shore maneuver.
3. Maneuver security element into designated positions.
4. Maneuver support element to over-watch position.
5. Maneuver assault element to designated assault position.
6. Conduct actions on objective.
7. Execute planned withdrawal.

**REFERENCES**:
1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS**:
AAV-AMPH-5001  AAV-AMPH-5002

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS**:
INF-MAN-6302  INF-MAN-7304

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS**:
1803-SUPT-1001  1803-TAC-1005  1833-SUPT-2001
1833-TAC-2005  AAV-AMPH-3004  AAV-AMPH-4001
AAV-TAC-4002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS**: AAV-AMPH-6002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**:

**ORDNANCE**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA**:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.

**AAV-AMPH-5005:** Support an Amphibious Demonstration

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.12.1  
MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To deceive the enemy by a show of force, deluding the enemy into taking an unfavorable course of action.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Launch from amphibious shipping.
2. Maneuver AAVs into required tactical wave formations.
3. Conduct turn-away.
4. Re-embark amphibious shipping.

**REFERENCES:**
1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**
AAV-AMPH-5001  
AAV-AMPH-5002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1803-SUPT-1001  
1803-TAC-1005  
1833-SUPT-2001
1833-TAC-2005  
1833-VOPS-1012  
AAV-AMPH-3004
AAV-AMPH-4001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
AAV-AMPH-6002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.
AAV-AMPH-5006: Support an Amphibious Withdrawal

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To extract forces from a hostile or potentially hostile shore to amphibious shipping.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Establish defensive measures in the troop embarkation area.
3. Conduct delaying/defensive actions as necessary.
4. Initiate withdrawal.
5. Recover aboard amphibious shipping.

REFERENCES:
1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AAV-AMPH-5001 AAV-AMPH-5002

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: INF-MAN-7303

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
I803-SUPT-1001 1833-SUPT-2001 AAV-AMPH-3004
AAV-AMPH-4001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-AMPH-6002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>2 per per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>2 per per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.
AAV-CBTS-5001: Support a Breach

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: In-stride, deliberate, amphibious and assault breaches are to be determined by mission and supported unit. Each type of breach demands same performance of crew, team and section in execution, differences lie only in time and environment obstacle is to be reduced or breached.

CONDITION: Given a Mobility/Countermobility AAV Platoon, area of operations, and operation order.

STANDARD: To reduce four lanes, which allows maneuver forces freedom of movement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in the planning.
2. Identify type of breach.
3. Determine physical environment.
5. Task-organize MCM assets.
6. Apply breaching fundamentals - suppress, obscure, secure, reduce and assault (SOSRA).

REFERENCES:
1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. JP 3-15 Barriers, Obstacles, and Mine Warfare for Joint Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-17 Engineering Operations
5. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AAV-CBTS-3001 AAV-CBTS-3003

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: INF-MAN-8208

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-CBTS-2007 AAV-CBTS-4001 AAV-CBTS-4002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-TAC-6001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J143 Rkt, Mtr 5 In MK22-4 F/MICLIC</td>
<td>3 rockets per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML25 Chg, Demo Linear HE LVT</td>
<td>3 charges per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML26 Chg, Demo Inert Linear LVT</td>
<td>3 charges per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17820 Engineer Qualification Range, Non-Standardized
MISCELLANEOUS:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**
1. This event is required for the MCM AAV Platoon only.
2. Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement.
3. Two rockets are required for peacetime training and three for wartime.

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** Each 1833 who is assigned to a MK 154 LMC Kit vehicle must possess a MK 154 LMC operator license obtained through graduation of CID: M10KAJM.

---

**AAV-CMDC-5001:** Plan for Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
- MCT 1.12.1
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4
- MCT 5.3.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**CONDITION:** Given a higher headquarters operation order, commander's guidance, and key leaders.

**STANDARD:** To communicate commander's intent in a clear useful form.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Receive HHQ order.
2. Set timeline.
3. Conduct estimate of the situation.
4. Determine enemy courses of action.
5. Form tentative plan.
6. Issue warning order.
7. Conduct coordination.
8. Arrange for reconnaissance.
10. Complete the plan.
11. Issue the order.
12. Prepare for combat.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
- 1803-TAC-1001
- 1833-CMDC-2006
- 1833-CMDC-2007
- 1833-TAC-2002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** AAV-CMDC-6002

---

**AAV-CSS-5001:** Conduct Resupply

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
- MCT 1.12.1
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a logistic requirement and higher headquarters' mission.

STANDARD: To lift supplies and equipment to a designated location.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Submit logistics request.
2. Coordinate with supported/supporting unit.
3. Provide security at resupply point.
4. Utilize resupply methods.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-CMDC-1005 1803-SUPT-1004 1833-CMDC-2003
1833-SUPT-2002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-CSS-6001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-CSS-5002: Conduct Recovery Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a platoon with a disabled/mired AAV.

STANDARD: To return the disabled AAV to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation or disposal.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task-organize platoon.
2. Vehicle commander reports condition, location and circumstances of damage.
3. Recover or repair equipment.
4. Request recovery team.
5. Remove equipment from the battlefield as required.
6. When directed, destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
7. Provide updates to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1803-SUPT-1005
1833-SUPT-2003
AAV-CSS-4001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
AAV-CSS-6001
AAV-CSS-6002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**AAV-CSS-5003:** Support Casualty Evacuation Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
- MCT 1.12.1
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given injured personnel with an air or ground platform capable of conducting a CASEVAC.

**STANDARD:** To treat, evacuate, and track casualties in a timely manner with minimal interruption of operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. If able, casualty applies self-aid.
2. If in direct contact with the enemy, utilize suppression and smoke to allow for movement to the casualty.
3. Marines apply buddy aid to the injured.
4. Evacuate friendly and enemy wounded in action (WIA) and killed in action (KIA) to Casualty Collection Point (CCP), while taking reasonable measures to safeguard casualties.
5. Weapons, serialized gear, and Personnel Protective Equipment (PPE) are handled and accounted for in accordance with unit Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs).
6. Wounded enemy combatants are safeguarded/escorted as required.
7. Unit corpsmen conduct triage at CCP, and advise company leadership on evacuation priorities and numbers.
8. Conduct coordination with higher headquarters for evacuation.
9. Begin casualty reporting and tracking immediately after an individual is wounded, starting at the lowest level and terminating at higher headquarters.
10. In accordance with SOPs, civilian casualties are either evacuated through military system, or coordination is conducted for treatment by civilian medical personnel/facilities.

**REFERENCES:**
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 3-40A.7 Patient Movement
3. MCRP 3-40A.9 First Aid
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-CMDC-1005 1803-SUPT-1004 1833-CMDC-2003
1833-SUPT-2002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-CSS-6001 AAV-CSS-6003

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-GNRY-5001: Conduct Gun Table X (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table X is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks.

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped maneuver element platoon (with ITESS), allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-T.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-GNRY-4003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1008 1803-GNRY-1010 1833-GNRY-2005
1833-GNRY-2006 1833-GNRY-2007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>FM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ORDNANCE: Consider receiving an additional 5% of .50 Cal as a planning factor for remediation.

DODIC QUANTITY
A598 Ctg,.50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked 4200 rounds per Platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

EQUIPMENT: If ITESS is unavailable, Table X will be conducted using dry fire techniques.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.

AAV-GNRY-5002: Conduct Gun Table XI (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XI is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks.

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped maneuver element platoon, allocated training ammunition, fully sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with the rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-T.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AAV-GNRY-4003 AAV-GNRY-5001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE: Consider receiving an additional 5% of .50 Cal as a planning factor for remediation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A598 Ctg,.50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked</td>
<td>4200 rounds per Platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

EQUIPMENT: If ITESS is unavailable, Table XI will be conducted using dry fire techniques.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.

AAV-GNRY-5003: Conduct Gun Table XII (L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1      MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES      SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XII is designed to evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment.

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped maneuver element platoon, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commander's METT-T.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-2002
AAV-GNRY-3001 AAV-GNRY-3002 AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3009 AAV-GNRY-4003 AAV-GNRY-5001
AAV-GNRY-5002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-CMDC-1004 1803-GNRY-1008 1803-GNRY-1010
1833-GNRY-2007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE: 1. 3600 rounds of DODIC A576 OR A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both. 2. DODIC B584 may be used in place of BA21. 3. Consider receiving an additional 5% of .50 Cal and 12% of 40mm as a planning factor for remediation.

DODIC QUANTITY
A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked 3600 rounds per Platoon
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked 3600 rounds per Platoon
BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked 768 rounds per Platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.
AAV-TAC-5001: Conduct an Action Drill

SUPPORTED MET(S):  
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4  

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months  

DESCRIPTION: This task is designed to codify those drills that provide the platoon a level of brevity, which allows the platoon to achieve an advantageous position. Standard brevity codes have been developed to facilitate turning movements such as Bulldog: on line; Panther (right/left): single envelopment; Hammerhead (right/left) double envelopment; Rabbit: reverse direction. Unit and platoons are encouraged to expand from this community standard to enhance their ability to respond to enemy actions.  

CONDITION: Given a task-organized platoon.  

STANDARD: To achieve a position of advantage with respect to the enemy.  

EVENT COMPONENTS:  
1. Identify change in terrain, obstacle or enemy situation.  
2. Issue orders.  
3. All vehicles orient and move in prescribed formation and direction.  
4. Develop the situation.  
5. Send reports as required.  

REFERENCES:  
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations  
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)  

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:  
1803-CMDC-1001  1803-CMDC-1004  1803-TAC-1004  
1833-CMDC-1001  1833-CMDC-2002  1833-TAC-1001  
AAV-TAC-3001  

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:  
AAV-TAC-6001  AAV-TAC-6002  

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:  

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  

AAV-TAC-5002: Conduct a Passage of Lines  

SUPPORTED MET(S):  
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4  

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months  

CONDITION: Given a task-organized platoon.
**STANDARD:** To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Conduct link-up procedures.
3. Moving unit maintains turret orientation towards last known enemy location.
4. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
5. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.
6. Moving unit reports completion upon reaching Battle Handover Line.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
- 1803-CMDC-1003
- 1803-CMDC-1004
- 1833-CMDC-1003
- 1833-CMDC-2002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
- AAV-TAC-6001
- AAV-TAC-6002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**AAV-TAC-5003:** Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver the supported unit into position and provide fire support.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Assist in the planning.
2. Conduct inspections, rehearsals and preparations.
3. Provide recommendations for dismount points, load/bump plans, and linkup points/procedures.
4. Assist in development of scheme of maneuver.
5. Support mortar section as necessary.
6. Execute command and control.
7. Apply movement techniques and formations.
8. Conduct immediate actions/battle drills as required.
9. Establish support by fire as required.
10. Breach obstacles as necessary.
11. Conduct actions on the objective.
12. Consolidate and prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
INF-MAN-6001  INF-MAN-7001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1803-SUPT-1001  1803-SUPT-1003  1803-SUPT-1004
1803-TAC-1005  1803-TAC-1008  1833-SUPT-2001
AAV-TAC-4001  AAV-TAC-4001  AAV-TAC-4002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
AAV-TAC-6001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

**AAV-TAC-5004:** Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To prepare for follow-on operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Establish a hasty defense.
2. Coordinate mutual support with adjacent units.
3. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
4. Process ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports.
5. Redistribute ammunition, personnel, supplies, and equipment.
6. Send logistics reports to higher headquarters.
7. Conduct essential maintenance.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
- 1803-CMDC-1005
- 1803-VOPS-1004
- 1833-CMDC-2003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
- AAV-TAC-6001
- AAV-TAC-6002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**AAV-TAC-5005:** Support a Movement to Contact (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To gain and maintain contact with the enemy.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Assist in planning.
3. Task-organize AA units.
4. Conduct resupply.
5. Prepare for operations.
6. Execute command and control.
7. Cross line of departure.
8. Monitor and adjust movement formations based on estimate of the situation.
9. Breach obstacles as necessary.
10. Conduct gap crossing if necessary.
11. Execute actions on contact.
12. Send reports to higher.
13. Consolidate and prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
- INF-MAN-6002
- INF-MAN-7002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
- 1803-GNRY-1010
- 1803-SUPT-1001
- 1803-SUPT-1004
- 1833-TAC-1005
- 1833-SUPT-2001
- 1833-SUPT-2002
- 1833-TAC-2005
- AAV-TAC-4002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
- AAV-TAC-6001
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-TAC-5006: Support Defensive Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: This task encompasses either an area or mobile defense dependent upon commander's intent.

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To defeat/deny the enemy key terrain or infrastructure.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in the planning.
2. Task-organize AA unit.
3. Identify and mark primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
5. Identify sectors of fire/fields of fire.
6. Advise on effective employment of weapons systems, safety, and geometry of fires.
7. Produce and submit fire plan sketch in support of supporting unit defensive plan.
8. Rehearse defensive battle drills.
9. Entrench and improve positions/lines of communication.
10. Establish alert postures.
11. Conduct continuing actions.
12. Send/receive reports as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
INF-MAN-6101   INF-MAN-6102   INF-MAN-7101
INF-MAN-7102

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-SUPT-1001   1803-SUPT-1004   1803-TAC-1006

4-22  Enclosure (1)
INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-TAC-6002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

AAV-TAC-5007: Support a Retrograde (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Due to the unique characteristics of this type of defense, this task is separate from Support Defensive Operations.

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To gain time, preserve forces, avoid contact under undesirable conditions or maneuver the enemy into an unfavorable position.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
3. Plan for alternate or successive delaying actions as required.
4. Break contact, if necessary, from enemy forces.
5. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
6. Adhere to tactical control measures.
7. Maintain security.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
9. Prepare for follow-on operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-96 Brigade Combat Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
INF-MAN-6103 INF-MAN-7103
INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-TAC-1003  1833-TAC-2001  AAV-TAC-3001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:  AAV-TAC-6003

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**AAV-TAC-5009:** Support Shore-to-Shore Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a supported unit, mission, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To project combat power across a body of water.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct terrain analysis.
2. Determine type of crossing.
3. Advance to the waterline.
4. Establish near side security.
5. Cross waterway.
6. Establish far side security.
7. Seize the bridgehead.
8. Continue the mission.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** AAV-AMPH-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1803-AMPH-1007  1833-AMPH-2004  AAV-AMPH-4001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** AAV-TAC-6001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

4-24  Enclosure (1)
RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17921 Armored Vehicle Launch Bridge, Raft, And Ford Area
Facility Code 17922 Floating Bridge Site

AAV-TAC-5010: Support Riverine Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To control military aspects of an area dominated by inland bodies of water.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine environmental factors.
3. Determine type of operation (assault or surveillance, interdiction, and security).
4. Task-organize unit.
5. Review hydrographic data (waterway depth, width, bottom composition, currents, tidal ranges/currents, and bank characteristics).
6. Identify River Landing Areas and River Landing Sites.
7. Determine route.
8. Integrate fires.
9. Conduct rehearsals.
10. Execute mission.
11. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
12. Prepare for follow-on operations.

REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. NTTP 3-06.1 Riverine Operations

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-AMPH-5001

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: INF-MAN-7215

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-TAC-1001 1803-TAC-1008 1833-TAC-2002
1833-TAC-2008 AAV-AMPH-4001 AAV-TAC-4002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-TAC-6001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED SUITABILITY SIMULATOR UNIT OF MEASURE HOURS PM

4-25 Enclosure (1)
Yes  S/L  AAV-TT  Crew Hours  2  Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17921 Armored Vehicle Launch Bridge, Raft, And Ford Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Military aspects include communications, traffic, and commerce.
ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

SECTION & CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAGRAPH</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PURPOSE</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING</td>
<td>5001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES</td>
<td>5002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY</td>
<td>5003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS</td>
<td>5004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECTION LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>5005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREW LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>5006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Section and Crew-level Assault Amphibian unit events (4000 and 3000-Lev els). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to sections and crews and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

5001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AAV" indicating that the event is for units in the AAV Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the section and crew level are:

   AMPH - Amphibious Operations  
   GNRY - Gunnery  
   CBTS - Combat Support  
   TAC - Tactical Operations  
   CMDC - Command and Control  
   VOPS - Vehicle Operations  
   CSS - Combat Service Support

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

5002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

5003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Assault Amphibian Section. The mission of the Assault Amphibian (AA) section is to provide combat support to the infantry rifle platoon. The AA section consists of three AAV crews and is led by the AA Section Leader. He exercises tactical control of his AAVs under the command of the AA Platoon Commander. Additionally, an AA section may be utilized for supporting units such as the 81mm mortar platoon or an engineer platoon.
a. Provide fire support and maneuverability for supported unit.
b. Conduct amphibious operations.
c. Conduct mechanized operations.
d. Conduct offensive operations.
e. Conduct defensive operations.
f. Employ AA section fires.
g. Operate in a CBRN environment.

2. Assault Amphibian Section, Command. The mission of the AA command section is to provide battalion and regimental level staffs with a mechanized command center. The AA command section also provides mutual support for the AAVC7A1 with a secondary vehicle for security and logistical support. The AA command section consists of one AAVP7A1 and one AAVC7A1 vehicle.
   a. Establish AAVC7A1 as command post.
   b. Conduct amphibious operations.
   c. Conduct mechanized operations.
   d. Conduct defensive operations.
   e. Employ AA command section fires.
   f. Operate in a CBRN environment.

3. Assault Amphibian Section, Mobility/Countermobility Platoon. The mission of the AA Mobility/Countermobility (MCM) Section is to provide breaching capability to the Breach Commander. The AA MCM section consists of two AAVP7A1 vehicles and two AAVP7A1 vehicles with Mk 154 kits. The section is further broken down into two teams, each team with one AAVP7A1 and one AAVP7A1 with Mk 154 kit. The MCM section is led by the AA MCM Section Leader.
   a. Conduct breaching operations.
   b. Conduct amphibious operations.
   c. Conduct mechanized operations.
   d. Conduct defensive operations.
   e. Employ AA section fires.
   f. Operate in a CBRN environment.

4. AAV Crew, AAVP7A1. The mission of the AAVP7A1 crew is to support the reinforced infantry squad within the mission of the AA section. The AAV crew is comprised of three personnel: the Vehicle Commander and two Crewmembers. The AAV crew operates the AAVP7A1. The crew is led by the Vehicle Commander and operates under the direction of the AA Section Leader.
   a. Operate the AAV on land and in water with other vehicles in the section.
   b. Transport embarked personnel and cargo.
   c. Employ the Upgunned Weapons Station.
   d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
   e. Operate in a CBRN environment.

5. AAV Crew, AAVC7A1. The mission of the AAVC7A1 crew is to support the battalion and regimental level headquarters as a mechanized command post/fire support coordination center. The AAVC7A1 intercom assets provide the embarked troop commander and his staff with the capability to communicate with each other and to remotely operate radio assets from staff
positions within the vehicle. The AAVC7A1 weapon is primarily for self-defense. The AAVC7A1 crew is comprised of three personnel: the Vehicle Commander and two Crewmembers, and is augmented by a Communication Technician Marine. The crew is led by the Vehicle Commander and operates under the direction of the AA Command Section Leader.

a. Operate the AAVC7A1 on land and in water with other vehicles in the section.
b. Operate the AAVC7A1 communications equipment.
c. Employ the M240 medium machine gun.
d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
e. Perform PMCS on communications equipment.
f. Operate in a CBRN environment.

6. AAV Crew, MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. The mission of the AAVP7A1, with MK 154 LMC Mod 0 kit, crew is to provide breaching capability for the AA Mobility/Countermobility Section. The AAV crew operates the MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. The crew is comprised of three personnel: the Vehicle Commander and two Crewmembers. The crew is led by the Vehicle Commander and operates under the direction of the AA MCM Section Leader.

a. Operate the AAV on land and in water with other vehicles in the section.
b. Employ the MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.
c. Employ the Upgunned Weapons Station.
d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
e. Perform PMCS on MK-154 LMC Mod 0 equipment.
f. Operate in a CBRN environment.

5004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>E-Coded</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-4001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Waterborne Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>5-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-4002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Waterborne Evacuation of Personnel</td>
<td>5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-4003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Recover Disabled AAV in the Water</td>
<td>5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CBTS-4001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support a Section Breach</td>
<td>5-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CBTS-4002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support a Team Breach</td>
<td>5-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CBTS-4003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Explosive Proofing of Assault Lane from the Line of Demarcation</td>
<td>5-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-4001</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Support Command Section Operations</td>
<td>5-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CSS-4001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Recovery Operations</td>
<td>5-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-4001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table VII (S/L)</td>
<td>5-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-4002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table VIII (S/L)</td>
<td>5-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-4003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table IX (L)</td>
<td>5-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-4001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Support by Fire (S/L)</td>
<td>5-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-4002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support Mechanized Offensive Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>5-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-4003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support Infantry Defensive Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>5-19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>E-Coded</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-3001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Egress the AAV (S)</td>
<td>5-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Code</td>
<td>Event Description</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-3002</td>
<td>Employ AAV Afloat (S/L)</td>
<td>5-21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-3003</td>
<td>Conduct Vehicle Emergency Procedures Afloat</td>
<td>5-22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-3004</td>
<td>Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping</td>
<td>5-23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CBTS-3001</td>
<td>Install Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System</td>
<td>5-24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CBTS-3002</td>
<td>Load Ordnance</td>
<td>5-25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CBTS-3003</td>
<td>Employ Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System</td>
<td>5-25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CBTS-3004</td>
<td>Offload Ordnance</td>
<td>5-26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CBTS-3005</td>
<td>Remove Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System</td>
<td>5-27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-CMDC-3001</td>
<td>Operate the AAVC7</td>
<td>5-27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3001</td>
<td>Conduct Boresighting</td>
<td>5-28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3002</td>
<td>Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>5-29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3003</td>
<td>Conduct Gate to Live-Fire (S)</td>
<td>5-30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3004</td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table I (S/L)</td>
<td>5-31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3005</td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table II (L)</td>
<td>5-31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3006</td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table III (L)</td>
<td>5-33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3007</td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table IV (S/L)</td>
<td>5-34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3008</td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table V (L)</td>
<td>5-35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3009</td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table VI (L)</td>
<td>5-37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-TAC-3001</td>
<td>Employ AAV on Land (S/L)</td>
<td>5-38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-VOPS-3001</td>
<td>Conduct Demolition</td>
<td>5-39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5005. SECTION LEVEL EVENTS

**AAV-AMPH-4001:** Conduct Waterborne Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.12.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to train the section to operate and maneuver in the water, not necessarily to conduct operations with amphibious shipping.

**CONDITION:** Given a mission and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To negotiate a body of water without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Prepare AAVs to launch.
2. Launch AAVs into the water.
3. Maneuver AAVs into required formations.
4. Navigate AAVs.
5. Exit water.

**REFERENCES:**
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
3. MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1833-AMPH-1002  1833-AMPH-2001  AAV-AMPH-3001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-AMPH-1004  1833-AMPH-2003  1833-CMDC-1001
1833-CMDC-1002  1833-CMDC-2001  1833-CMDC-2002
1833-VOPS-1001  1833-VOPS-2001  AAV-AMPH-3002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-AMPH-5001  AAV-AMPH-5003  AAV-AMPH-5004
AAV-AMPH-5005  AAV-AMPH-5006  AAV-TAC-5009
AAV-TAC-5010

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>FM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE:

DODIC
L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1  1 signal per AAV
L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127  1 signal per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Amphibious shipping and infantry are not required to accomplish this event.

AAV-AMPH-4002: Conduct Waterborne Evacuation of Personnel

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an AA section with one disabled/slow sinking AAV.

STANDARD: To transfer all embarked personnel to a rescue vehicle.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Disabled/sinking AAV alerts unit of distress.
2. Determine method of transfer.
3. Position rescue vehicle to receive personnel.
4. Evacuate and transfer personnel.
5. Gain accountability.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-1002</td>
<td>1833-AMPH-2001</td>
<td>AAV-AMPH-3002</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-1003</td>
<td>1833-AMPH-1004</td>
<td>1833-AMPH-2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-2002</td>
<td>1833-VOPS-1001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAV-AMPH-5001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

---

**AAV-AMPH-4003:** Recover Disabled AAV in the Water

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.12.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** A safe haven is, "a beach or an amphibious ship." A boat haven is, "a well deck capable platform able to embark and protect a small craft from seas or affect repairs to a damaged craft."

**CONDITION:** Given an AA section in a body of water with one disabled AAV.

**STANDARD:** To tow the disabled vehicle to the nearest safe haven/boat haven.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Disabled AAV alerts unit of distress.
2. Position rescue AAV to recover disabled AAV.
3. Transfer embarked troops as necessary.
5. Tow AAV to nearest safe haven/boat haven.
6. Remove tow lines.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3 Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1833-AMPH-1002  1833-AMPH-2001  AAV-AMPH-3002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-AMPH-1004  1833-AMPH-1005  1833-AMPH-2003
1833-CMDC-1001  1833-CMDC-1002  1833-CMDC-2001
1833-VOPS-1001  AAV-AMPH-3003

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. When towing to L-Class shipping ensure communication is made with the controlling ship.
2. If at any point the towed vehicle places the towing vehicle in jeopardy, disconnect tow lines.

AAV-CBTS-4001:  Support a Section Breach

SUPPORTED MET(S):  MCT 1.4.1.1

EVALUATION-CODED:  NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:  12 months

CONDITION:  Given an AAV MCM section, Combat Engineer support, area of operations, and operation order.

STANDARD:  To reduce two lanes, which allows maneuver forces freedom of movement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in planning.
2. Identify type of breach.
3. Determine the physical environment.
4. Advise the Breach Force Commander.
5. Task-organize MCM assets.
6. Apply breaching fundamentals - suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSRA).

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-17.4 Engineer Reconnaissance
4. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility
PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-CBTS-3001

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
INF-MAN-7001  INFMAN-7208  INF-MAN-8208

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-CBTS-2007  AAV-CBTS-3002  AAV-CBTS-3003
AAV-CBTS-3004

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-CBTS-5001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J143 Rkt, Mtr 5 In MK22-4 F/MICLIC</td>
<td>3 rockets per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML25 Chg, Demo Linear HE LVT</td>
<td>3 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML26 Chg, Demo Inert Linear LVT</td>
<td>3 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is required for the MCM AAV Section only, which consists of six AAVP7 and six MK154.
2. Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement.

AAV-CBTS-4002: Support a Team Breach

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an AAV MCM team, Combat Engineer support, area of operations, and operation order.

STANDARD: To reduce one lane, which allows maneuver forces freedom of movement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Identify type of breach.
3. Determine the physical environment.
4. Advise the Breach Force Commander.
5. Task-organize MCM assets.
6. Apply breaching fundamentals - suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSRA).

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-17.4 Engineer Reconnaissance
4. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-CBTS-3001

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
INF-MAN-7001 INF-MAN-7208

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-CBTS-2007 AAV-CBTS-3002 AAV-CBTS-3003
AAV-CBTS-3004

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-CBTS-5001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J143 Rkt, Mtr 5 In MK22-4 F/MICLIC</td>
<td>3 rockets per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML25 Chg, Demo Linear HE LVT</td>
<td>3 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML26 Chg, Demo Inert Linear LVT</td>
<td>3 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is required for the MCM AAV Team only.
2. Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement.

AAV-CBTS-4003: Conduct Explosive Proofing of Assault Lane from the Line of Demarcation

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1 MCT 1.4.1.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Assault breaching will be conducted by Joint Direct Attack Munition Assault Breaching System (JABS), followed by explosive proofing to identify clear lane(s). The width of the assault lane from the shallow water region to the line of demarcation on the landing beach may be 50 to 165 yards.

CONDITION: Given a Mk 1 Mod 0 (REIN), area of operations with dedicated lanes, and operation order.

STANDARD: To allow for the rapid buildup of combat power ashore.
**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Assist in the planning.
2. Analyze IPB.
3. Conduct rehearsals.
4. Report/respond to MCM Commander for tactical control through the line of demarcation.
5. Navigate ship-to-shore lanes to proofing point.
6. Identify/verify proofing position(s).
7. Launch explosive proofing ordnance.
8. Establish lane marking.
9. Provide security.
10. Report/respond to LF Commander for tactical control through the line of demarcation.
11. Prepare for follow-on MCM missions as required.

**REFERENCES:**
1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. JP 3-15 Barriers, Obstacles, and Mine Warfare for Joint Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility
5. MCWP 3-34 Engineer Operations

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** AAV-CBTS-3001

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
CEB-MOBL-6001 INF-MAN-8208 INF-MAN-8301

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1833-CBTS-2007 AAV-CBTS-3002 AAV-CBTS-3003 AAV-CBTS-3004

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J143 Rkt, Mtr 5 In MK22-4 F/MICLIC</td>
<td>3 rockets per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML25 Chg, Demo Linear HE LVT</td>
<td>3 charges per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML26 Chg, Demo Inert Linear LVT</td>
<td>3 charges per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17820 Engineer Qualification Range, Non-Standardized

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**
1. This event is required for the MCM unit only.
2. Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement.
3. Without gyro stabilization the AAV is unsuited to launch ordnance afloat; Explosive proofing will only be conducted when the AAV has obtained positive contact with land.
AAV-CMDC-4001: Support Command Section Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4  MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters staff, an AAVC7 and AAVP7.

STANDARD: To provide C2 capabilities.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in establishing mobile COC.
2. Task-organize AAVC7 and AAVP7.
3. Advise supported unit on command section employment.
4. Employ medium and heavy machine guns, as required.
5. Assist supported unit with operating the communications suite system.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS
   (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: 1833-CMDC-2004

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
INF-C2-7003  TANK-C2-7001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-SUPT-1002  1833-SUPT-2001  AAV-CMDC-3001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.
2. This event is required for the AAVC7 section only.

AAV-CSS-4001: Conduct Recovery Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a section with a disabled AAV.

STANDARD: To return the AAV to operation or take it to a collection point
for repair, evacuation, or disposal.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Vehicle commanders provide condition, location and circumstances of damage.
2. Conduct assessment.
3. Recover or repair equipment.
4. As directed, destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items, and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
5. Provide updates to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
5. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-SUPT-2003 1833-VOPS-1010 AAV-VOPS-3001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-CSS-5002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-GNRY-4001: Conduct Gun Table VII (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to fire and maneuver as a section.

CONDITION: Given an AAV maneuver element section (with ITESS), allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-T.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-1003 AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004 AAV-GNRY-3009
INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-GNRY-2005 1833-GNRY-2007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE: Consider receiving an additional 10% of .50 Cal as a planning factor for remediation.

DODIC:
A598 Ctg,.50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked

QUANTITY:
350 rounds per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. All crews must have passed the GST, GT I, and GTLF within the previous six months.
4. The crew's VC and driver must have passed GT I and GTLF as a team prior to live-fire.

AAV-GNRY-4002: Conduct Gun Table VIII (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1          MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VIII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks and prepare section for qualification.

CONDITION: Given an AAV maneuver element section, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets, and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-T.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003  1833-GNRY-1003  AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004  AAV-GNRY-3009  AAV-GNRY-4001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-GNRY-2005  1833-GNRY-2007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORNANACE: Consider receiving an additional 10% of .50 Cal as a planning factor for remediation.

DODIC: A598 Ctg,.50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked

QUANTITY: 350 rounds per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. All Crews must have passed the GST, GT I, and GTLF within the previous six months.
4. The crew's VC and driver must have passed GT I and GTLF as a team prior to live-fire.

AAV-GNRY-4003: Conduct Gun Table IX (L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table IX is designed to evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment.

CONDITION: Given an AAV maneuver element section, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets, and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commanders METT-T.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003  1833-GNRY-1003  1833-GNRY-2002
AAV-GNRY-3001  AAV-GNRY-3002  AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004  AAV-GNRY-3009  AAV-GNRY-4001
AAV-GNRY-4002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-GNRY-2007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>FM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORNAMENT: 1. DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this table, NOT both. 2. B584 may be used in place of BA21. 3. Consider receiving an additional 10% of .50 Cal and 40mm as a planning factor for remediation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>1200 rounds per Section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>1200 rounds per Section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Frac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>256 rounds per Section</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.
MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Section Qualification must be conducted live-fire using full-caliber ammunition.
3. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
4. All Crews must have passed the GST, GT I, and GTLF within the previous six months.
5. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.
6. The crew's VC and driver must have passed GT I and GTLF as a team prior to live-fire.

AAV-TAC-4001: Conduct a Support by Fire (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a AAV section and supported unit.

STANDARD: To engage the enemy with direct fire in support of a maneuvering force in order to ensure their freedom of movement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct troop-leading procedures.
2. Determine location of support by fire.
3. Integrate fires in support of maneuver.
4. Occupy support by fire location.
5. Coordinate with supported unit.
7. Control direct fires.
8. Determine effects on target(s).
10. Adjust fires/overwatch, as necessary.
11. Displace, as necessary.
12. Submit combat reports.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-TAC-5003

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:
SIMULATED SUITABILITY SIMULATOR UNIT OF MEASURE HOURS PM
Yes S/L AAV-TT Crew Hours 2 Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-TAC-4002: Support Mechanized Offensive Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To maneuver the supported unit into position and provide fire support.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in the planning.
2. Conduct inspections, rehearsals and preparations.
3. Provide recommendations for dismount points, load/bump plans, and
   linkup points/procedures.
4. Assist in development of scheme of maneuver.
5. Execute command and control.
6. Apply movement techniques and formations.
7. Conduct immediate actions/battle drills as required.
8. Establish support by fire.
9. Conduct actions on the objective.
10. Consolidate.
11. Submit reports as required.
12. Prepare for follow-on actions.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-SUPT-2002 1833-TAC-2005 AAV-TAC-3001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-AMPH-5003 AAV-AMPH-5004 AAV-TAC-5003
AAV-TAC-5005 AAV-TAC-5010

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

AAV-AMPH-5003
AAV-TAC-5005

SIMULATION EVALUATION:
SIMULATED SUITABILITY SIMULATOR UNIT OF MEASURE HOURS PM
Partial S/L AAV-TT Crew Hours 4 Y

5-18 Enclosure (1)
RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.
2. All vehicle commanders and crewmembers must be at least GST and Gun Table I weapons qualified prior to operating in a live-fire and movement environment.

AAV-TAC-4003: Support Infantry Defensive Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To defeat/deny the enemy key terrain or infrastructure.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Establish security.
2. Identify and mark primary, alternate and supplementary positions.
3. Occupy battle position.
4. Establish principle direction(s) of fire.
5. Establish fields of fire.
6. Produce, receive and forward fire plan sketches and range cards.
7. Adhere to communications and signals plan.
8. Establish and rehearse final protective fires, counterattack plan and defensive battle drills.
10. Conduct continuing actions.
11. Submit combat reports.
12. Support retrograde as required.

REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1833-TAC-2007

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-TAC-5006

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

5006. CREW LEVEL EVENTS

AAV-AMPH-3001: Egress the AAV (S)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 48 months

CONDITION: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged AAV.

STANDARD: To return all crew and passengers to the surface of the water.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Order "egress, egress, egress."
2. Crew and embarked personnel unfasten seatbelts.
3. Crew and designated personnel unlock hatches.
4. Crew and embarked personnel exit the AAV.
5. Account for crew and embarked personnel.

REFERENCES: AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-AMPH-1001 1833-AMPH-1001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-AMPH-5001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>FET (MAET)</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This task shall be trained using the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). Egress drills can be conducted on AAV while parked at the ramp or during field exercises, but the training will not be satisfied by any means other than SVET.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. The Shallow Water Initial Memory Mechanical Exit Release (SWIMMER) and the Shallow Water Egress Trainer (SWET) is utilized by the Naval Survival Training Institute (NSTI) as part of their egress training continuum to increase Marines’ comfort in the water as well as their proficiency in SVET and AAV egress. SWIMMER and SWET are available at all eight NSTI training sites, but are not currently utilized by the Marine Corps. If possible, unit training shall include SWIMMER and SWET training prior to using the SVET.
2. Reserve training will take place at Initial Location for Mobilization (ILOC) or during two week annual training (AT).

AAV-AMPH-3002: Employ AAV Afloat (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a crew and all necessary equipment.

STANDARD: To negotiate a body of water without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Prepare the vehicle for waterborne operation.
2. Conduct water entry/launch.
3. Respond to tactical control measures.
4. Apply waterborne movement formations.
5. Operate AAV in water tracks/jet mode.
6. Respond to markers, signs, and signals.
7. Transition AAV from water to land/ship.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1833-AMPH-1002 1833-AMPH-2001 AAV-AMPH-3001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-AMPH-1004 1833-AMPH-2003 1833-CMDC-1001
1833-CMDC-1002 1833-CMDC-2001 1833-CMDC-2002
1833-VOPS-1001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-AMPH-4001
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is intended for both calm water and surf zone operations.

AAV-AMPH-3003: Conduct Vehicle Emergency Procedures Afloat

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given a disabled or slow sinking AAV.

STANDARD: To evacuate personnel and/or recover AAV.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct vehicle commander emergency procedures afloat.
2. Conduct driver emergency procedures afloat.
3. Conduct crewmember emergency procedures afloat.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-AMPH-3002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1803-AMPH-1003</th>
<th>1803-AMPH-1005</th>
<th>1833-AMPH-1003</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-1005</td>
<td>1833-AMPH-2002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AAV-AMPH-4002</th>
<th>AAV-AMPH-4003</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 Per per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 Per per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-3004: Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: This task is the foundation for the conduct of amphibious assaults, raids, demonstrations, withdrawals, and other amphibious operations. For amphibious certification a crew must conduct a static launch, and underway launch utilizing two of the following methods: parallel, turn-away, angled, parallel U-Turn, and angled U-Turn. One of the aforementioned launches must be conducted at night.

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew, an amphibious ship at sea, and requirement to conduct night and day operations.

STANDARD: To recover and launch from a well deck.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Receive the order.
2. Negotiate waterway obstacles.
3. Perform embarkation procedures.
4. Secure vehicle with lashing assembly.
5. Perform debarkation procedures.
6. Conduct tactical launch.
7. Maneuver within approach lane.
8. Respond to tactical control measures.
9. Transition to shore as required.
10. Identify designated Rescue Team (RT).

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-AMPH-1002 1833-AMPH-1002 1833-AMPH-2001
AAV-AMPH-3002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-AMPH-1004 1803-AMPH-1006 1803-CMDC-1002
1833-AMPH-1004 1833-AMPH-1006 1833-AMPH-2003
1833-CMDC-1002 1833-CMDC-2001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-AMPH-5002  AAV-AMPH-5003  AAV-AMPH-5004
AAV-AMPH-5005  AAV-AMPH-5006

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L311 Sig, Illum Red Para M126A1</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127</td>
<td>1 signal per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This is considered crew certification.

AAV-CBTS-3001: Install Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, 5-ton capable lifting source and collateral equipment.

STANDARD: To prepare Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System for operation in accordance with TM 09962A-13&P/2B.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Adhere to safety precautions.
2. Follow installation procedures.
3. Conduct operational test.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: 1833-CBTS-2001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-CBTS-2002  1833-VOPS-2008

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is required only for members of the MCM platoon.
AAV-CBTS-3002: Load Ordnance

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO       SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System and collateral equipment.

STANDARD: To prepare system for deployment in accordance with TM 09962A-13&P/2B.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Adhere to safety precautions.
2. Conduct stray voltage check.
3. Follow pre-fire checks.
4. Follow rocket motor loading procedures.
5. Follow line charge fusing procedures.
6. Follow line charge loading procedures.
7. Connect rocket bridle cables.
8. Follow electrical connection of the line charge.
9. Follow electrical connection of the rocket.
10. Perform rocket thrust positive connection.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: 1833-CBTS-2003

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-CBTS-4001       AAV-CBTS-4002       AAV-CBTS-4003

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is required only for members of the MCM platoon.

AAV-CBTS-3003: Employ Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO       SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given loaded munitions and area of operations.

STANDARD: To reduce an obstacle.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Adhere to safety precautions.
2. Operate electrically.
3. Operate manually.
4. Follow ordnance malfunction procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
3. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: 1833-CBTS-2004

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-CBTS-4001    AAV-CBTS-4002    AAV-CBTS-4003

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J143 Rkt, Mtr 5 In MK22-4 F/MICLIC</td>
<td>3 rockets per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML25 Chg, Demo Linear HE LVT</td>
<td>3 charges per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML26 Chg, Demo Inert Linear LVT</td>
<td>3 charges per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17820 Engineer Qualification Range, Non-Standardized

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is required only for members of the MCM platoon.
2. Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement.

AAV-CBTS-3004: Offload Ordnance

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO    SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System and collateral equipment.

STANDARD: To clear system of munitions in accordance with TM 09962A-13&P/2B.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Adhere to safety precautions.
2. Follow disarming line charges procedures.
3. Follow unloading rocket procedures.
4. Follow line charge defusing procedures.
5. Follow off-loading line charge container procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
3. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: 1833-CBTS-2005

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is required only for members of the MCM platoon.

---

**AAV-CBTS-3005:** Remove Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.4.1.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, 5-ton capable lifting source and collateral equipment.

**STANDARD:** To remove system from an AAVP7A1 and stow it in accordance with TM 09962A-13&P/2B.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Adhere to safety precautions.
2. Disconnect power cable from forward slave receptacle.
3. Remove guards and assemblies.
4. Remove control box.
5. Remove wiring harness.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1833-CBTS-2006  1833-VOPS-2008

---

**AAV-CMDC-3001:** Operate the AAVC7

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.12.1  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4  MCT 5.3.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The AAVC7 crew is responsible for the readiness of the system, while the supported unit is responsible for employment.

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVC7 with associated SL-3.

**STANDARD:** To ensure that the system is functioning and able to support the using unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Assist in establishing mobile COC.
2. Advise supported unit on command section employment.
3. Advise embarked staff with configuring and operating the communications suite.
4. Troubleshoot the communications suite.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: 1833-CMDC-2004

EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
INF-C2-7010 TANK-C2-7001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-SUPT-1002 1833-SUPT-2001 1833-VOPS-1005
1833-VOPS-1007

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AAV-CMDC-4001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Eligible crewmembers of the AAVC7A1 should attend the GCE Operations Specialist Course (CID: N30RCC1/N03KBC1).

AAV-GNRY-3001: Conduct Boresighting

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with crew, machine guns, boresight kit, boresight target, associated SL-3, and references.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment within 15 minutes.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
2. Align MK19 aiming point.
3. Align M2 aiming point.
4. Conduct day sight boresight.
5. Conduct thermal sight boresight.
6. As required, perform mantlet sight alignment procedures.
7. Conduct retention procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
2. TM 8F419D-01 Technical Manual for M36E-T1 Thermal Sight System
INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1005  1833-GNRY-1005

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of Gun Table I.

AAV-GNRY-3002: Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a boresighted AAVP7, ammunition, and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD: To place center of beaten zone on the target.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Verify thumb slide position.
2. Fire the MK19.
3. Adjust sight as necessary.
4. Fire the M2.
5. Make necessary adjustments to T&E.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-GNRY-3001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1007  1833-GNRY-1006

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE: 1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 2. B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555. 3. 50 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576, and 16 rounds of DODIC B542 or BA21 will be used to execute this task will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg, .50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked</td>
<td>16 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Frac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>16 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,
MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.

AAV-GNRY-3003: Conduct Gate to Live-Fire (S)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an AAV Turret Trainer, scenario and Instructor-Operator (IO).

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum rating of qualified per simulated table.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Qualify on 15 of 15 pre-live-fire exercises (Exercise GC01-GC15)
2. Qualify on 1 of 3 Pre-qualification Gate to Live-Fire exercises (Exercise PC01-PC03)
3. Qualify on 1 of 3 qualification Gate to Live-Fire exercises (Exercise QC01-QC03)

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003  1803-GNRY-1004  1803-GNRY-1008
1833-GNRY-1003  1833-GNRY-1004  1833-GNRY-2005
1833-GNRY-2006

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AAV-GNRY-4003  AAV-GNRY-5003

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) contained within MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event.
3. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 12 months.
4. Pre-qualification and qualification must occur on different scenarios.

**AAV-GNRY-3004**: Conduct Gun Table I (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

**CONDITION**: Given an AAVP7.

**STANDARD**: To demonstrate technical proficiencies as an AAV crew.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills.
2. Perform crew roll over drills.
3. Send, receive radio reports.
4. Send, receive digital reports.
5. Evacuate an injured crewmember.
6. Boresight an AAV.
7. Mount and remove turret mounted weapons.

**REFERENCES**:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS**:
- 1803-CMDC-1003
- 1803-GNRY-1005
- 1833-CMDC-1003
- 1833-GNRY-1004
- 1833-GNRY-1005

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**:

**SIMULATION EVALUATION**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MISCELLANEOUS**:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS**:
1. This event is a prerequisite in order to conduct live-fire.
2. Event 3 can be accomplished to standard utilizing simulation.
3. All event components can be conducted at the ramp.

**AAV-GNRY-3005**: Conduct Gun Table II (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table II is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage (dry fire) stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle (short halt/tactical control point) posture.

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 and full sized targets, in a daylight or limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
2. Task #1: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing UGWS.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
6. Task #5: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing UGWS.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AAV-GNRY-3003  AAV-GNRY-3004

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1008  1833-GNRY-2005  1833-GNRY-2006

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: Hours captured in Gate to Live-Fire event.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a prerequisite in order to conduct live-fire.
2. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere
3. A crewmember must conduct one day and one night engagement as the gunner.

**AAV-GNRY-3006**: Conduct Gun Table III (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**DESCRIPTION**: Gun Table III is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array with the MK19 from a stationary vehicle.

**CONDITION**: Given an AAVP7, 3/4 scale targets (if available), and allocated ammunition in a daylight or limited visibility environment.

**STANDARD**: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
2. Task #1: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
7. Task #6: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
8. Task #7: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS.
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS.

**REFERENCES**:
1. DA-Pam 385-63 Range Safety
2. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS**:
1803-GNRY-1003  1833-GNRY-1003  AAV-GNRY-3001
AAV-GNRY-3001  AAV-GNRY-3002  AAV-GNRY-3002
AAV-GNRY-3003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS**:
1803-GNRY-1008  1833-GNRY-2005  1833-GNRY-2006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**:

**SIMULATION EVALUATION**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTES**: This includes the sustainment hours per month required by 5-33
MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

ORDNANCE: 1. DODIC B584 may be used in place of BA21. 2. As a planning factor, allocate an extra 12% of 40 mm ammunition for crew remediation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>96 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Crews must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live-fire.
2. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
3. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
4. A crewmember must conduct one day and one night engagement as the gunner.

AAV-GNRY-3007: Conduct Gun Table IV (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table IV is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array at extended ranges with the M2 from a stationary or moving (short halt/tactical control point) vehicle utilizing the UGWS.

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, full-scaled targets (3/4 optional), and allocated ammunition in a daylight or limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
2. Task #1: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
6. Task #5: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the UGWS.
8. Task #7 Engage multiple targets one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS.
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets using the UGWS.
REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-1003 AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004 AAV-GNRY-3005 AAV-GNRY-3006

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1008 1833-GNRY-2005 1833-GNRY-2006

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: This includes the sustainment hours per month required by MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

ORDNANCE: 1. Only DODIC A555 or A576 will be used, not both. 2. A557 may be used in place of A555. 3. As a planning factor, allocate an extra 5% of .50 cal ammunition for crew remediation.

DODIC QUANTITY
A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked 700 rounds per AAV
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked 700 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. A crewmember must conduct one day and one night engagement as the gunner.

AAV-GNRY-3008: Conduct Gun Table V (L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table V is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving (short halt/tactical control point) vehicle utilizing all weapons from the UGWS.
CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, full-scale targets (3/4 optional), and allocated ammunition in a daylight or limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
2. Task #1: Engage multiple targets one stationary one moving utilizing the UGWS.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
6. Task #5: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS.

REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-2002
AAV-GNRY-3001 AAV-GNRY-3002 AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004 AAV-GNRY-3005 AAV-GNRY-3006
AAV-GNRY-3007

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-CMDC-1004 1803-GNRY-1008 1833-CMDC-2002
1833-GNRY-2005 1833-GNRY-2006

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: This includes the sustainment hours per month required by MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

ORDNANCE: 1. Only 450 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used, not both. 2. DODIC A557 may be used in place of A555. 3. As a planning factor, allocate an extra 5% of .50 cal and an extra 12% of 40 mm ammunition for crew remediation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg, .50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>450 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>450 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>48 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,
MISCELLANEOUS:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**
1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Crew's must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live-fire.
3. A crewmember must conduct one day and one night engagement as the gunner.

**AAV-GNRY-3009:** Conduct Gun Table VI (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Gun Table VI is designed to evaluate the crew on engaging moving and stationary targets using all vehicle weapon systems while in the defensive or offensive postures.

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVP7, full-scaled targets, and allocated ammunition in a daylight or limited visibility environment.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Task #0: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS.
2. Task #1: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the UGWS.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
6. Task #5: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing UGWS.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving targets utilizing the UGWS.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**
1803-GNRY-1003  1833-GNRY-1003  1833-GNRY-2002
AAV-GNRY-3001  AAV-GNRY-3002  AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004  AAV-GNRY-3005  AAV-GNRY-3006
AAV-GNRY-3007  AAV-GNRY-3008

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1803-CMDC-1004  1803-GNRY-1008  1833-CMDC-2002
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: This includes the sustainment hours per month required by MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

ORDNANCE: 1. 450 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both. 2. As a planning factor, allocate an extra 5% of .50 cal and an extra 12% of 40 mm ammunition for crew remediation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>450 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>450 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>56 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. Crews will receive an overall qualification rating (Distinguished, Superior, Qualified, Unqualified) for Table VI based on the common scoring model dual qualification criteria (qualified tasks and total crew points) per the MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
4. Crews must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live-fire.

AAV-TAC-3001: Employ AAV on Land (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MCT 1.4.1.1</th>
<th>MCT 1.6.1</th>
<th>MCT 1.6.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MCT 5.3.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EVALUATION-CODED: NO
SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an area of operation.

STANDARD: To operate within maneuver space without loss or damage to equipment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct operations checks.
2. Apply principles of terrain driving.
3. Apply movement technique.
4. Apply movement formation.
5. Conduct battle drills.
6. Conduct immediate actions.
7. Adhere to tactical control measures.
8. Conduct actions on contact.
9. Submit combat reports.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-90.15 Site Exploitation
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
- 1803-CMDC-1001
- 1803-TAC-1003
- 1833-CMDC-1003
- 1833-TAC-2003

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
- AAV-CSS-6004
- AAV-TAC-4002
- AAV-TAC-4003
- AAV-TAC-5001
- AAV-TAC-5007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**AAV-VOPS-3001:** Conduct Demolition

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
- MCT 1.12.1
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given demolition material and an order to destroy an AAV.

**STANDARD:** To prevent enemy use of the vehicle and/or its critical components.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Determine time available.
2. Zeroize communication equipment.
3. Determine the items to be destroyed.
4. Remove salvageable items.
5. Determine methods of destruction available.
6. Apply procedures of destruction.

**REFERENCES:**
of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1803-VOPS-1007 1833-VOPS-1013

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** AAV-CSS-4001
ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

MOS 1803 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

PURPOSE

EVENT CODING.

ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.

PREREQUISITES

BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES.

INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS.

1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAGRAPH</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6000</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6001</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6002</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6003</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6004</td>
<td>6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6005</td>
<td>6-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6006</td>
<td>6-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Officer. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident/distance learning PME.

6001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1803" indicating that the event is for AAV Officers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for AAV Officers are:

AMPH - Amphibious Operations
CMDC - Command and Control
COND - Conditioning
CSS - Combat Service Support
GNRY - Gunnery
SUPT - Support
TAC - Tactical Operation
TRNG - Training
VOPS - Vehicle Operations

C. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

6002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

6003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine AAV Officer will have completed The Basic School (TBS), Quantico, VA and Assault Amphibian Officer Course, Assault Amphibious School, Camp Pendleton, CA.
6004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The AAV Officer will complete the Assault Amphibian Officer Course, Assault Amphibian School, Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon graduation, the AAV Officer will conduct additional 2000 level training in an Assault Amphibian unit in a variety of billets. 2000 level training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar, and distance learning courses.

2. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Platoon Commander. The AA Platoon Commander is responsible for the vehicles and crews of the AA platoon. The Platoon Commander is proficient with all T/O weapons within the platoon and is well versed on their employment. Additionally, the Platoon Commander is responsible for training his unit to perform those METs assigned by the Company Commander. The discipline, morale, and welfare of Marines within the platoon are priorities of the Platoon Commander. When supporting an infantry Company Commander, the Platoon Commander is responsible for advising on the deployment and tactical employment of his unit. The AA Platoon Commander directs the maneuver and fires of his platoon in accordance with the intent of the infantry Company Commander. The AA Platoon Commander occupies the weapon station of the vehicle utilized by the infantry Company Commander.

   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks that support company training objectives.

      (2) Maintains the welfare and discipline of assigned platoon.

      (3) Coordinate with supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit and C2 capabilities.

      (4) Manages the preventive and corrective maintenance efforts on all vehicles and all associated collateral equipment.

      (5) Communicates using organic wired and wireless systems.

      (6) Proficient in battle tracking and submitting reports.

      (7) Supervises the evacuation of casualties.

      (8) Employs proper movement techniques and formations.

      (9) Employs operational safety procedures.

      (10) Proficient in use of all weapons organic to AA platoon.

     (11) Coordinates unit fires in support of assigned mission.

      (12) Advises supported commander on logistical requirements.

      (13) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

      (14) Supervises the preparation of platoon through Pre-Combat Checks (PCCs) and Pre-Combat Inspections (PCIs).
(15) Leads the platoon in tactical operations as part of a larger force.

3. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Mobility/Countermobility Platoon Commander. Responsible for the vehicles and crews in the AA Mobility/Countermobility (MCM) platoon. The MCM platoon commander supports the Ground Combat Element with breaching capability. The MCM platoon commander leads two sections of Marines that crew AAVP7A1s with and without MK 154 LMC Mod 0 kits.

   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks that support company training objectives.

      (2) Maintains the welfare and discipline of the platoon.

      (3) Manages the preventative and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.

      (4) Communicates using organic wired and wireless systems.

      (5) Proficient in battle tracking and submitting reports.

      (6) Supervises the evacuation of casualties.

      (7) Advises supported unit commander on employment of unit and MK 1 Mod 0.

      (8) Employs operational safety procedures.

      (9) Proficient in use of all weapons organic to AA platoon.

      (10) Advises supported unit commander on logistical requirements.

      (11) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

      (12) Supervises the preparation of platoon through Pre-Combat Checks (PCCs) and Pre-Combat Inspections (PCIs).

      (13) Leads the platoon in tactical operations as part of a larger force.


   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Makes operational planning and training recommendations to the Company Commander.

      (2) Maintain the accountability, welfare, and discipline of the company and assigned equipment.

      (3) Supervises unit training and operations.
(4) Supervises range operations.

(5) Supervises unit logistical support and requirements.

(6) Trains AA Platoon Commanders in performance of duties.

(7) Supervises the conduct and supervises ancillary training events.

(8) Supervises the company's embarkation training and planning.

(9) Conducts Risk Management.

(10) Mentors and develop subordinate leaders to operate independently in support of a unit.

5. BILLET: AA Company Commander. The senior 1803 in the AA Company. The Company Commander is responsible for the vehicles and crews of the AA company. The Company Commander is proficient with all T/O weapons within the company and is well versed on their employment. Additionally, the Company Commander is responsible for training his unit to perform those METs assigned by the Battalion Commander. The discipline, morale, and welfare of Marines within the company are priorities of the Company Commander. The AA Company Commander works for the commanding officer of the supported infantry regiment or battalion and becomes a special staff officer to the supported infantry commander. The AA Company Commander leads one or more AA platoons and a maintenance platoon. He is responsible for all vehicle maintenance and associated collateral gear including additional support equipment.

   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Directs the logistic support organic to the AA company in support of the company's AAVs.

      (2) Responsible for mentoring the Platoon Commanders and Executive Officer

      (3) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the company.

      (4) Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.

      (5) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical and maintenance requirements for AA unit.

      (6) Employs Risk Management procedures.

      (7) Trains and supervises assigned personnel in the performance of tasks that support battalion training objectives.

      (8) Responsible for overall preventive and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.

      (9) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

6. BILLET: Headquarters and Service Company Commander. The Headquarters and Service (H&S) Company Commander provides the AA Battalion Commander the means to affect command and control of the battalion and supported command
group. Through subordinate platoons and sections, the H&S Company Commander provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply, and other support functions to the AA Battalion Commander.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Serves as headquarters commandant for AA battalion.

(2) Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.

(3) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.

(4) Employs Risk Management procedures.

(5) Responsible for the overall preventive and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.

(6) Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training, and tactical operations of AA battalion.

(7) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support.

(8) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

(9) Oversees maintenance related activities of AA unit.

(10) Maintains the welfare and discipline of the company.

(11) Coordinates the staff sections in the performance of tasks that support battalion training objectives.

(12) Responsible for movement and security of battalion field trains as well as the Battalion Support Area (BSA).

7. **BILLET: Assistant Operations Officer.** Assists Battalion Operations Officer in duties and task associated with the primary mission of the AA battalion.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Assists Operations Officer with planning, training, coordinating, and supervising employment of units.

(2) Maintains accountability, welfare, and discipline of operations section and assigned equipment.

(3) Serves as the Battalion Unit Training Management Officer.

(4) Serves as the Operation Planning Team Leader.

(5) Assists in the preparation of battalion reports and briefs.

(6) Conducts Risk Management.
(7) Trains and integrates all agencies within the Alpha and Bravo commands.

(8) Prepared to assume the role of the Battalion Operations Officer.

(9) Serves as watch officer in battalion COC.

(10) Assists the Operations Officer with coordinating the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

8. BILLET: Battalion Operations Officer. Field grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion training and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the Battalion Commander’s intent.

   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training and tactical operations of an assault amphibian battalion.

      (2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support of units.

      (3) Responsible for determining priorities for allocation of personnel, weapons, equipment and ammunition.

      (4) Makes operational planning recommendations to the Battalion Commander.

      (5) Coordinates with naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

      (6) Certified as an Operations and Tactics Instructor (OTI) prior to assuming the billet. See MCO 3502.7 and Command and Control T&R Manual (2000-Level Individual Tasks) for specific functions/responsibilities.

9. BILLET: Battalion Logistics Officer. Field grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion logistical requirements and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Assumes staff responsibility for determining logistical requirements, support, and operations for an AA battalion.

      (2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising logistical support of AA units.

      (3) Makes operational planning recommendations to the Battalion Commander.

      (4) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

      (5) Supervises the battalion's maintenance programs.
10. **BILLET: Battalion Executive Officer.** Second most senior 1803 officer in the battalion. Assumes command in Battalion Commander's absence. Responsible for managing and coordinating the battalion staff and administrative tasks.

   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Coordinates all actions of the battalion staff.

      (2) Supervises staff planning process.

      (3) Ensures battalion reports are made as required to higher and adjacent commanders.

      (4) Maintains information flow to the Battalion Commander.

      (5) Designated security manager of the battalion.

11. **BILLET: Battalion Commanding Officer.** The AA battalion commander serves as a special staff officer to the Commanding General of the Marine Division. The Battalion Commander also directs the maintenance and logistic trains organic to the battalion to support operations as directed by the Commanding General.

   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Advises supported unit commander on employment of AA unit.

      (2) Responsible for the vehicle preventative and corrective maintenance.

      (3) Responsible for the training of personnel in the performance of tasks which support division training objectives.

      (4) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.

      (5) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the battalion.

      (6) Directs organic combat training and logistical operations in support of subordinate units.

      (7) Leads assault amphibian battalion as an independent maneuver element when directed.

Note: The Assault Amphibian Battalion has the ability to function as a maneuver element headquarters when provided augmentation from higher headquarters.
## 6005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1803-AMPH-1001</td>
<td>Egress the AAV (S)</td>
<td>6-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-AMPH-1002</td>
<td>Prepare for Amphibious Operations</td>
<td>6-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-AMPH-1003</td>
<td>Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel (P)</td>
<td>6-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-AMPH-1004</td>
<td>Control Unit Maneuver Afloat (L)</td>
<td>6-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-AMPH-1005</td>
<td>Direct Recovery Operations Afloat</td>
<td>6-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-AMPH-1006</td>
<td>Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping</td>
<td>6-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-AMPH-1007</td>
<td>Conduct Shore-to-Shore Operations</td>
<td>6-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-CMDC-1001</td>
<td>Communicate Using Visual Signals</td>
<td>6-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-CMDC-1002</td>
<td>Respond to Signs/Markers</td>
<td>6-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-CMDC-1003</td>
<td>Operate the Communications Suite (S/L)</td>
<td>6-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-CMDC-1004</td>
<td>Control Radio Communications</td>
<td>6-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-CMDC-1005</td>
<td>Control Submission of Reports (S/L)</td>
<td>6-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1001</td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons</td>
<td>6-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1002</td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>6-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1003</td>
<td>Conduct Gunnery Skills Test</td>
<td>6-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1004</td>
<td>Perform Gun Table I (S/L)</td>
<td>6-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1005</td>
<td>Conduct Boresighting</td>
<td>6-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1006</td>
<td>Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>6-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1007</td>
<td>Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>6-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1008</td>
<td>Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)</td>
<td>6-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1009</td>
<td>Engage Targets (S/L)</td>
<td>6-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1010</td>
<td>Direct Unit Fires (S/L)</td>
<td>6-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1011</td>
<td>Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher (S/L)</td>
<td>6-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-SUPT-1001</td>
<td>Advise Supported Unit Commander on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Employment</td>
<td>6-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-SUPT-1002</td>
<td>Advise Employment of AAVC7A1</td>
<td>6-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-SUPT-1003</td>
<td>Determine/Select Use of AAV Special Mission Kits</td>
<td>6-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-SUPT-1004</td>
<td>Support Unit Specified Tasks</td>
<td>6-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-SUPT-1005</td>
<td>Direct Recovery Operations</td>
<td>6-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TAC-1001</td>
<td>Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace</td>
<td>6-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TAC-1002</td>
<td>Conduct Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)</td>
<td>6-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TAC-1003</td>
<td>Conduct Mounted Navigation</td>
<td>6-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TAC-1004</td>
<td>Apply Tactical Driving Techniques (S/L)</td>
<td>6-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TAC-1005</td>
<td>Lead an AA Unit in Offensive Operations</td>
<td>6-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TAC-1006</td>
<td>Prepare Fire Plan Sketch</td>
<td>6-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TAC-1007</td>
<td>Lead an AA Unit in Defensive Operations</td>
<td>6-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TAC-1008</td>
<td>Provide Estimates for Fire Support Planning</td>
<td>6-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TRNG-1001</td>
<td>Manage Unit Training Program</td>
<td>6-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TRNG-1002</td>
<td>Develop a Unit Exercise</td>
<td>6-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TRNG-1003</td>
<td>Lead an After Action Review (AAR)</td>
<td>6-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-VOPS-1001</td>
<td>Apply Risk Management</td>
<td>6-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-VOPS-1002</td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services</td>
<td>6-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-VOPS-1003</td>
<td>Maintain SL-3</td>
<td>6-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-VOPS-1004</td>
<td>Direct Operational Checks</td>
<td>6-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-VOPS-1005</td>
<td>Identify a System Malfunction</td>
<td>6-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-VOPS-1006</td>
<td>Tow AAV on Land</td>
<td>6-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-VOPS-1007</td>
<td>Conduct Demolition</td>
<td>6-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-VOPS-1008</td>
<td>Monitor Maintenance Process</td>
<td>6-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-VOPS-1009</td>
<td>Conduct Vehicle Inspection</td>
<td>6-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-COND-2001</td>
<td>March with a Fighting Load</td>
<td>6-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-SUPT-2001</td>
<td>Perform Duties of a Special Staff Officer</td>
<td>6-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-SUPT-2002</td>
<td>Advise Breach Force Commander</td>
<td>6-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-TAC-2001</td>
<td>Supervise Quartering Party Operations</td>
<td>6-44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6006. 1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS

**1803-AMPH-1001**: Egress the AAV (S)

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 48 months

**MOS PERFORMING**: 1803

**GRADES**: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING**: FORMAL

**CONDITION**: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged AAV.

**STANDARD**: To reach the surface of the water.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS**:
1. Unfasten seatbelt.  
2. Unlock assigned hatch.  
3. Employ life support equipment as required.  
4. Exit vehicle.  
5. Gain access to surface.

**REFERENCES**: AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATION EVALUATION:</th>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simulated</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>FET (MAET)</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**: This task shall be trained using the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). Egress drills should be conducted on AAV while parked at the ramp or during field exercises, but the training will not be satisfied by any means other than SVET.

**MISCELLANEOUS**:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS**: Reserve training will take place at Initial Location for Mobilization (ILOC) or during two week annual training (AT).
1803-AMPH-1002: Prepare for Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

BILLETS: Company Commander, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and mission.

STANDARD: To facilitate the scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with landing team.
2. Coordinate with supporting amphibious ship(s).
3. Analyze beach hydrography/obstacles.
4. Analyze the landing plan.
5. Assist in the development of source documents for amphibious operations.
6. Identify time, space, logistics available.
7. Conduct inspections/rehearsals.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. BMU-HNDBK-5400.1 BEACHMASTER HANDBOOK
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1803-AMPH-1003: Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel (P)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne AAV with crew and passengers.

STANDARD: To conduct a safe and orderly evacuation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Initiate emergency procedures afloat.
2. Supervise driver emergency procedures afloat.
3. Supervise crewmember emergency procedures afloat.
4. Perform water survival techniques.
REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>FET (MAET)</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1803-AMPH-1004: Control Unit Maneuver Afloat (L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, mission, commander's intent, and an amphibious platform.

STANDARD: To embark/land surface assault elements and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive the order.
2. Negotiate waterway obstacles.
3. Perform embarkation procedures.
4. Secure vehicle with lashing assembly.
5. Perform debarkation procedures.
6. Conduct tactical launch.
7. Respond to tactical control measures.
8. Perform Wave Guide Officer responsibilities.
9. Transition to shore.
10. Perform duties of Rescue Team (RT).

REFERENCES:
1. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
2. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:
**Simulated Suitability Simulator Unit of Measure HOURS**

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Range/Training Area:**
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

**Other Support Requirements:** Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task.

---

**1803-AMPH-1005:** Direct Recovery Operations Afloat

**Evaluation-Coded:** NO  **Sustainment Interval:** 6 months

**Description:** A safe haven is, "a beach or an amphibious ship." A boat haven is, "a well deck capable platform able to embark and protect a small craft from seas or affect repairs to a damaged craft."

**MOS Performing:** 1803

**Grades:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**Initial Training Setting:** FORMAL

**Condition:** Given an Assault Amphibian unit with a disabled AAV in a body of water, associated crews, and SL-3.

**Standard:** To return the disabled vehicle to the nearest safe haven/boat haven.

**Performance Steps:**
1. Assess the environment/situation.
2. Conduct troop transfer as required.
3. Determine waterborne towing method.
4. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.
5. Prepare towing vehicle for towing.
6. Position the rescue vehicle in accordance with the towing method.
7. Attach tow lines.
8. Secure designated hatches.
9. Tow disabled vehicle.

**References:**
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**Support Requirements:**

**Range/Training Area:**
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
1803-AMPH-1006: Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO    SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian platoon and amphibious shipping.

STANDARD: To recover and launch from a well deck without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Coordinate with naval personnel.
3. Perform embarkation procedures.
4. Supervise vehicle dogging procedures.
5. Supervise pre-water operations, preparations, and undogging procedures.
6. Perform debarkation procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3 Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation
5. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
6. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-AMPH-1001  1803-AMPH-1002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task.

1803-AMPH-1007: Conduct Shore-to-Shore Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO    SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a water obstacle, personnel and equipment.
STANDARD: To negotiate a body of water without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security posture.
2. Determine type of crossing.
3. Conduct site analysis.
4. As required, determine speed and direction of current.
5. Assess entry/exit points.
6. Determine/conduct amphibious drift technique as required.
7. Consolidate.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803-CMDC-1001: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew and an operating area.

STANDARD: To control the movement of vehicle(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Employ day ground guiding signals.
2. Employ night ground guiding signals.
3. Employ day tactical hand and arm signals.
4. Employ night tactical hand and arm signals.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Special equipment is required for night operations (i.e. cone lights, chemical light sticks, etc.).
1803-CMDC-1002: Respond to Signs/Markers

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights, and markers.

STANDARD: To control Assault Amphibious Vehicle movement/action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to standard beach signs/markers.
2. Respond to standard naval signs/markers.
3. Respond to standard tactical signs/markers.
4. Respond to standard logistical signs/markers.
5. Recognize waterway navigational signs/markers (red right returning).

REFERENCES:
1. COMDTINST M16500.3A Aids to Navigation Manual—Technical
2. COMDTINST M16500.7A Aids to Navigation Manual—Administration
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1803-CMDC-1003: Operate the Communications Suite (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and radio net.

STANDARD: To communicate with crew and other elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the communications equipment for operations.
2. Operate the Combat Vehicle Crewman (CVC) helmet.
3. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
4. Operate the audio frequency amplifier.
5. Operate the receiver/transmitters.
6. Operate the position location systems.
7. Shut down communication suite.
REFERENCES:

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1803-CMDC-1004: Control Radio Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and Communications Electronics Operating Instruction (CEOI).

STANDARD: To enforce voice radio procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify that all elements have the data and COMSEC.
2. Update frequency hopping data using Electronic Remote Fill (ERF).
3. Enforce standard radio procedures.
4. Adhere to local unit call signs and frequencies.
5. Enforce radio silence as required.
6. Determine the presence of electronic countermeasures.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
2. MCRP 8-10B.10 Radio Operators Handbook

1803-CMDC-1005: Control Submission of Reports (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL
CONDITION: Given report formats and a situation requiring tactical or administrative information.

STANDARD: To inform higher headquarters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine type of report (administrative, logistical, operational or amphibious).
2. Generate or receive report.
3. Forward report.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. ATTP 3-21.71 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley)
3. MCRP 2-10A.7 Reconnaissance Reports Guide
4. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATION EVALUATION:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIMULATED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1803-GNRY-1001: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK19, M2, or M240 machine gun and reference.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clear the machine guns.
2. Perform safety check.
3. Disassemble the weapon.
4. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
5. Report worn or defective parts.
6. Assemble the weapon.
7. Perform function check.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning
2. TM 08521A-10/1A Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, MK19 MOD 3
3. TM 08670A/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

**1803-GNRY-1002**: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING**: 1803

**GRADES**: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING**: FORMAL

**CONDITION**: Given an AAVP7 with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

**STANDARD**: To keep equipment in operating condition.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS**:
1. PMCS turret exterior.
2. PMCS turret interior.
3. Lubricate turret components.
4. Operate electrical components.
5. Operate manual components.
6. Complete UGWS pre-operation checklist.

**REFERENCES**:
1. TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**:

**EQUIPMENT**: Requires M257 test equipment.

---

**1803-GNRY-1003**: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

**GRADES**: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING**: FORMAL

**CONDITION**: Given an AAVP7, all associated training devices, and references.

**STANDARD**: To verify competencies prior to the conduct of live-fire gunnery.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS**:
1. Recognition of Threat Vehicles and Theater Threat Vehicles (within 10 min).
2. Identify Ammunition (within 3 min).
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on MK19 machine gun (within 8 min).
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M2 machine gun (within 21 min).
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M240 machine gun (within 7 min).
6. Perform misfire procedures on turret mounted weapons (within 5 min).
7. Load/Unload turret mounted weapons (within 20 min).

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
3. TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning
5. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
6. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A159 Ctg, 7.62mm Dummy M172 Linked</td>
<td>100 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A560 Ctg,.50 Cal Dummy M2</td>
<td>200 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B472 Ctg, 40mm Dummy M922 / M922A1</td>
<td>96 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is a pre-requisite event required to be conducted prior to all AAV vehicle mounted live-fire events.

1803-GNRY-1004: Perform Gun Table I (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with associated equipment and crew.

STANDARD: To complete all required tasks in accordance with TC 3-20.21-1 prior to conducting live-fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills (within 28 sec).
2. Perform crew roll over drills (within 28 sec).
3. Send, receive radio reports (within 15 min).
4. Send, receive digital reports (within 10 min).
5. Evacuate an injured crewmember (within 28 sec).
6. Boresight an AAV (within 15 min).
7. Mount and remove turret mounted weapons (within 20 min).
REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
4. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Performance steps 5 and 7 are MOS-Specific Physical Standards required for the MOS of 1803. See Appendix G for further detail.

1803-GNRY-1005: Conduct Boresighting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO          SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, machine guns, boresight kit, boresight target, associated SL-3, and references, while acting as a member of a crew.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
2. Align MK19 aiming point.
3. Align M2 aiming point.
4. Conduct day sight boresight.
5. Conduct thermal sight boresight.
6. As required, perform mantlet sight alignment procedures.
7. Conduct retention procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
3. TM 8F419D-OI Technical Manual for M36E-T1 Thermal Sight System

MISCELLANEOUS:
**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This task will be performed to standard as part of Gun Table I.

---

**1803-GNRY-1006:** Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1803

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVP7, inhibit zone aligning tool, and reference.

**STANDARD:** To establish safe and effective fields of fire in accordance with TM 10004A-10/1E.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Prepare the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone.
2. Confirm the inhibit zone elevation.
3. Confirm inhibit zone 2 azimuths.
4. Confirm inhibit zone 1 azimuths.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
2. TM 10004A-25&P/2E Maintenance Instructions and Repair Parts List Organizational, Intermediate, and Depot Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:** Inhibit Zone Aligning Tool.

---

**1803-GNRY-1007:** Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1803

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a boresighted AAV with crew, ammunition, and stationary target at 500m.

**STANDARD:** To place center of beaten zone on the target.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Verify thumb slide position.
2. Fire the MK19.
3. Adjust sight as required.
4. Fire the M2.
5. Make adjustments to T&E as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE: 1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 2. 50 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both. 3. B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>16 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.

1803-GNRY-1008: Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and scenario.

STANDARD: To destroy or neutralize a threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard during the Gunnery Tables.

1803-GNRY-1009: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Designed to evaluate the Platoon Commander's ability to engage stationary or moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary vehicle.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with weapons and ammunition.

STANDARD: To score a minimum of 70 points on 70% of the engagements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform One Defensive Engagement: Day and Night
2. Perform One Offensive Engagement: Day and Night
3. Perform One Short Halt or Traffic Control Point: Day OR Night
4. Perform One Short Range Machine Gun Engagement: Day OR Night
5. Perform One CBRN Engagement: Day and Night
6. Perform One Short-Range Engagement: Day OR Night
7. Perform One Long Range Engagement: Day OR Night

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ORDNANCE: 1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 2. DODICs B584/B542 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555/A576. 3. 300 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>300 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>300 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>160 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire one practice and one qualification.
3. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
4. Scenario Development, vehicle posture, and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLS) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:
- Advanced Gunner (9-10)
- Qualified Gunner (7-8)
- Unqualified (0-6)

1803-GNRY-1010: Direct Unit Fires (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a task-organized force and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Emplace weapon systems.
2. Develop fire control measures.
3. Determine fire pattern.
4. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
5. Determine engagement priority.
6. Direct weapons control status.
7. Determine engagement technique.
8. Issue fire command.
9. Control rates of fire.
10. Send reports.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATION</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE: 1. 300 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both. 2. DODICs B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555/A576.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803-GNRY-1011: Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLET: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with crew and SL-3.

STANDARD: To provide obscuration for the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Load grenade launcher.
2. Close all hatches.
3. Clear all personnel to rear of launcher firing zone (164 ft/50 m).
4. Ensure power to vehicle and UGWS.
5. Arm smoke grenade launcher.
6. Fire grenade launcher(s).
7. As required, perform immediate action.

REFERENCES: TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GG24-</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grenade,</td>
<td>grenades</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Launcher</td>
<td>per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrared</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Don't place any part of body in front of launchers while loading or unloading.
2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803-SUPT-1001: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Employment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, Capt, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mission and a command relationship with a supported unit.

STANDARD: To assist with planning by providing estimates of supportability and subject matter expertise.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assist the supported unit leader with mission analysis and planning.
2. Task-organize the AA unit.
3. Brief the vehicle AA unit's limitations/capabilities.
4. Brief the AA unit's offensive and defensive considerations.
5. Brief the AA unit's amphibious employment considerations.
6. Determine and address the logistical requirements.
7. Brief the vehicle safety guidelines.
REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. ATTP 3-21.71 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley)
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 3-30 Marine Air-Ground Task Force Command and Control

1803-SUPT-1002: Advise Employment of AAVC7A1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a supported unit.

STANDARD: To establish a mobile COC.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Provide input on system components/capabilities.
2. Provide recommendations for section employment.
3. Provide input on defensive capabilities.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3

1803-SUPT-1003: Determine/Select Use of AAV Special Mission Kits

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 36 months

DESCRIPTION: Assault Amphibious Vehicle Special Mission Kits include: Enhanced Appliqué Armor Kit, Litter Kit, and Mk 154 Linear Mine Clearing Kit.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order from higher and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To enhance vehicle capabilities/survivability.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Assess the capabilities/limitations of each special mission kit.
3. Identify the appropriate special mission kit to use.
4. Determine the time and resources required to install/remove kit.
5. Determine the impact on mission with and without kit installed.


1803-SUPT-1004: Support Unit Specified Tasks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The AAV platoon is able to provide a myriad of support missions to their supported units, which include casualty evacuation, command and control, fire support team, support by fire, mortars transport, as well as resupply operations. The Platoon Commander should be able to determine supportability based upon the associated specified task.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, an operation order form higher, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver while achieving commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in the planning process.
2. Brief AAV capabilities to support CASEVAC, C2, FiST, SBF, EPW, and/or resupply.
3. Identify unit assigned task(s).
4. Determine requirement(s).
5. Task-organize.
6. Advise supported commander on employment techniques.

REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations

1803-SUPT-1005: Direct Recovery Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL
**CONDITION:** Given one or more disabled/mired AAV(s) and additional AAVs with crews and equipment.

**STANDARD:** To recover the disabled Assault Amphibious Vehicle(s) and position it/them for repair or towing.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Assess situation.
2. As required, set security.
3. Identify types of assets required.
4. As required, submit reports/requests.
5. Supervise the preparation of disabled/mired vehicle(s).
6. Execute recovery procedures.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
- Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Use of an AAVR7 for recovery operations is optional.

---

**1803-TAC-1001:** Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1803

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an operation order and an area of operations.

**STANDARD:** To evaluate enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities and probable courses of action.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Define the battlespace environment.
2. Describe the battlespace’s effect on operations.
3. Evaluate the threat.
4. Determine threat COA.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803-TAC-1002: Conduct Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: AAV units are capable of conducting operations in special terrain. Mobility limitations must be considered when employing the unit in jungle, desert, mountainous, urbanized terrains; and cold weather climates.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and an operation order from higher.

STANDARD: To employ the vehicle within environmental limitations and without damage to equipment or personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct/receive IPB.
2. Identify mobility limitations.
3. Consider employment techniques.
4. Consider maintenance requirements.
5. Install special missions kits as required.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
**1803-TAC-1003: Conduct Mounted Navigation**

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months  
**MOS PERFORMING:** 1803  
**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT  
**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL  
**CONDITION:** Given an AAV, designated point(s), map, and a navigation device.  
**STANDARD:** To maneuver to 8 of 10 designated points.  

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**  
1. Create route.  
2. Prepare navigation devices (map, TACNAV, DAGR as required).  
3. Conduct map orientation.  
5. Move to a designated point.  

**REFERENCES:**  
1. TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation  
2. TM 09880C-OR DAGR Operator's Pocket Guide  

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**  
**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1803-TAC-1004: Apply Tactical Driving Techniques (S/L)**

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months  
**MOS PERFORMING:** 1803  
**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT  
**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL  
**CONDITION:** Given a unit of AAVs conducting operations on land.  
**STANDARD:** To position the unit in response to a threat.  

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**  
1. Utilize terrain to avoid exposure to the threat.  
2. Utilize dispersion with respect to METT-T.  
3. Maintain speed that supports the scheme of maneuver.  
4. Respond to threats.  

**REFERENCES:**  
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations  
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations  
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>DVTE</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The following formations must be demonstrated: column, vee, wedge, echelon left/right, unit on-line, and herringbone. The following movement techniques must be demonstrated: bounding overwatch, successive bounding, and travelling overwatch.

1803-TAC-1005: Lead an AA Unit in Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO    SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Offensive operations consist of: movement to contact, mechanized attack, exploitation, and pursuit.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and an operation order from higher.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver while achieving commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in the planning process.
2. Recommend task-organization to best support concept of operations.
3. Participate in IPB.
4. Advise on movement technique.
5. Control AAV employment during movements in support of the scheme of maneuver.
6. Direct AA unit fires in support of concept of operations.
7. Prepare for follow-on missions.

REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803-TAC-1006: Prepare Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months
MOS PERFORMING: 1803
GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit in a defensive position.

STANDARD: To provide interlocking fires and fields of mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Combine section fire plan sketches firing data.
2. Illustrate vehicles and firing data.
3. Illustrate dead space.
4. Illustrate terrain.
5. Annotate orientation data.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1803-TAC-1007: Lead an AA Unit in Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
MOS PERFORMING: 1803
GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and an operation order from higher.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver while achieving commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in the planning process.
2. Recommend task-organization to best support concept of operations.
3. Advise on AAV capabilities and limitations.
4. Recommend type of defense being conducted.
5. Direct emplacement of AAVs.
6. Prepare platoon fire plan sketch.
7. Direct rehearsals.
8. Advise displacement to alternate firing positions.
9. Direct AA unit fires in support of concept of operations.
10. Submit reports as required.
11. Prepare for follow-on missions.

REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations


EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and fire support assets.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver with effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify desired effects.
2. Identify fire support coordinating measures.
3. Plan targets on known, suspected, and likely enemy positions/avenues of approach/avenues of withdrawal.
4. Identify priority targets.
5. Submit list of targets to higher headquarters.
6. Receive target list from higher headquarters.
7. Integrate updated fire support plan with scheme of maneuver.
8. Disseminate fire support plan.
9. Continually refine the fire support plan based on METT-T.

REFERENCES: MCRP 3-31.6 Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (JFIRE)

1803-TRNG-1001: Manage Unit Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Commander, Company Commander, Operations Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL
**CONDITION:** Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and commander's training guidance.

**STANDARD:** To ensure combat readiness.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Identify Mission Essential Task List (METL).
2. Assess unit readiness.
3. Prioritize training requirements.
4. Develop short and mid-range plans as appropriate.
5. Schedule required training.
6. Schedule prime time for training cycles.
7. Conduct backward planning.
8. Identify available training resources and align with training priorities.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCO 1553.3B Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

---

**1803-TRNG-1002:** Develop a Unit Exercise

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETs:** Battalion Commander, Company Commander, Operations Officer, Platoon Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and commander's training guidance.

**STANDARD:** To ensure combat readiness.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Identify collective and individual training events from T&R manuals.
2. Identify live, virtual, and constructive training venues.
3. Identify resource requirements.
4. Develop a scheme of maneuver.
5. Develop opposing force plan.
7. Develop after action review.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCO 1553.3B Unit Training Management (UTM)
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training
1803-TRNG-1003: Lead an After Action Review (AAR)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and a completed event/operation.

STANDARD: To enhance combat readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Designate area for after action.
2. Account for all unit and individual equipment.
3. Discuss observations of personnel during event.
4. Engage all personnel for inputs.
5. Compile information obtained and submit to higher.

REFERENCES: MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1803-VOPS-1001: Apply Risk Management

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AA unit.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of crews, embarked personnel, and dismounted personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure serviceability of recovery equipment.
2. Ensure serviceability of waterborne equipment.
3. Ensure equipment/cargo items are secure on vehicles.
4. Enforce all safety regulations with embarked personnel.
5. Verify that all dismounted personnel maintain minimum safe distance from vehicles.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCO 3500.27, Risk Management (RM)
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803-VOPS-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To maintain vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. PMCS the vehicle exterior.
2. PMCS the vehicle engine compartment.
3. PMCS the vehicle driver and troop commander's station.
4. PMCS the vehicle troop compartment.
5. PMCS the vehicle while engine is running.

REFERENCES:
1. TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles

1803-VOPS-1003: Maintain SL-3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with all associated equipment and references.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability/serviceability of equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect the vehicle SL-3 equipment to determine accountability/serviceability.
2. Supervise the inventory of SL-3.
3. Annotate SL-3 discrepancies as required.
4. Reconcile SL-3 discrepancies as required.
5. Supervise PMCS of SL-3 equipment.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. SL-3-07707C/07267C/07268C Components List for Assault Amphibious Vehicle Model 7A1 Family of Vehicles
3. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures

1803-VOPS-1004: Direct Operational Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
MOS PERFORMING: 1803
GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL
CONDITION: Given an AA unit with associated SL-3 and reference(s).
STANDARD: To identify vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct pre-operation checks.
2. Direct during operation checks.
3. Direct at-halt operation checks.
4. Direct after operation checks.

REFERENCES:
1. TI 09674A-0D/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles

1803-VOPS-1005: Identify a System Malfunction

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
MOS PERFORMING: 1803
GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL
CONDITION: Given an AAV and the reference.
STANDARD: To return the vehicle to an operational status.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognize a malfunction symptom.
2. Follow the Troubleshooting Symptom Index.
3. As required, conduct emergency closing of the plenums.
4. As required, conduct bypass of the contact cooler.
5. Report all discrepancies to vehicle commander and/or maintenance personnel.
6. Assist maintenance personnel in performance of corrective maintenance and services.


SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1803-VOPS-1006: Tow AAV on Land

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled AAV requiring recovery, and an operational AAV with associated crew and equipment.

STANDARD: To move the disabled AAV to the nearest collection point.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.
2. Prepare recovery vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables or tow bar.
4. Tow disabled AAV.


SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performance step 3 is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. See Appendix G for further detail.
1803-VOPS-1007: Conduct Demolition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given demolition material and an order to destroy an AAV.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use of vehicle and/or its critical components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove salvageable items.
2. Zero communications equipment.
3. Determine methods of destruction available.
4. Determine the items to be destroyed.
5. Destroy identified equipment.

REFERENCES:
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

1803-VOPS-1008: Monitor Maintenance Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Maintenance Production Report (MPR) and GCSS-MC access.

STANDARD: To gain an accurate assessment of the unit's readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify elements of reports.
2. Verify discrepancies.
3. Verify job status.
4. Verify parts status.
5. Verify job completion.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures
1803-VOPS-1009: Conduct Vehicle Inspection

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and references.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability, serviceability and operational readiness of unit equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect SL-3.
2. Inspect the AAV and systems.
3. Inspect Ordnance Vehicle Logbook.
4. Inspect Weapons Record Book.
5. Inspect the weapon(s).
6. Inspect the communication suite.
7. Verify that all discrepancies are properly reported and reconciled in GCSS-MC.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
3. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

1803-COND-2001: March with a Fighting Load

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an individual weapon, a fighting load, and as part of a unit movement.

STANDARD: To complete a 15-kilometer march within four hours.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assemble the load for the march.
2. Don the load for the march.
3. Complete a 15 kilometer march.

REFERENCES: MCRP 8-10B.4 Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat

MISCELLANEOUS:
**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. Prior to executing this event, Marines will conduct a 5K and 10K march with the fighting load. Individual field equipment weight is not to exceed 55 pounds.

**1803-SUPT-2001:** Perform Duties of a Special Staff Officer

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1803

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a unit task-organized to a supported organization.

**STANDARD:** To provide subject matter expertise on AAV employment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Recommend task-organization of AA unit.
2. Supervise organic maintenance support.
3. Supervise organic logistics support.
4. Advise supported commander on AAV employment.
5. Coordinate with staff sections.
6. Assist in planning.
7. Evaluate operations and provide recommendations.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**1803-SUPT-2002:** Advise Breach Force Commander

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Battalion Commander, Company Commander, Operations Officer, Platoon Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV Mobility/Countermobility unit, required supported and supporting elements of a breach force, and an obstacle.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System is deployed and the AAV MCM unit is employed within their capabilities/limitations.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Advise on logistics requirements.
2. Recommend task-organization.
3. Provide recommendations on AAV MCM unit employment.
REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. MCWP 3-17.4 Engineer Reconnaissance

1803-TAC-2001: Supervise Quartering Party Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operation order, personnel, and equipment.

STANDARD: To prepare an assembly area for follow-on forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconnoiter the area.
2. Determine suitability.
3. Direct the establishment of security.
4. Clear area.
5. Direct improvements and security posture.

REFERENCES:
1. ATTP 3-21.71 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley)
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
### ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

**CHAPTER 7**

**MOS 1833 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAGRAPH</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PURPOSE</td>
<td>7000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING</td>
<td>7001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES</td>
<td>7002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREREQUISITES</td>
<td>7003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES</td>
<td>7004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS</td>
<td>7005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>7006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

MOS 1833 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

7000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Crewmember. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident career progression training (Assault Amphibian Unit Leader Course)/distance learning PME.

7001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1833" indicating that the event is for AAV Crewmembers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for AAV Crewmembers are:

   AMPH - Amphibious Operations
   COND - Conditioning
   CBTS - Combat Support
   CMDC - Command and Control
   SUPT - Support
   GNRY - Gunnery
   TAC - Tactical Operation
   TRNG - Training
   VOPS - Vehicle Operations

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

7002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

7003. PREREQUISITES. The 1833 AAV Crewmember will have completed the Assault Amphibian Crewmember Course before reporting in at an Assault Amphibian Battalion.
7004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The AAV Crewmember will complete the Assault Amphibian Crewmember Course, Assault Amphibian School Battalion, Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon graduation, the AAV Crewmember will conduct additional 2000 level training in an Assault Amphibian unit in a variety of billets. 2000 level training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

2. BILLET: Crewmember, AAVP7. Junior 1833 Crewmember on the AAV. The AAV Crewmember carries out the orders of the AAV Platoon Commander. The Crewmember is proficient with all T/O weapons on the AAV, and is responsible for executing all duties commensurate with the tactical and technical responsibilities as an AAV Crewmember.

   a. Core Capabilities:
      (1) Executes Vehicle Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV.
      (2) Drives AAV.
      (3) Assists Vehicle Commander with acquiring targets.
      (4) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.
      (5) Assists in vehicle operational checks of AAV.
      (6) Assists with Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on AAV.
      (7) Assists in embarking and debarking of the infantry.
      (8) Maintains good order and discipline in the troop compartment.
      (9) Warns of violations to the watertight integrity of the hull.
      (10) Assists embarked personnel in vehicle evacuation and egress.
      (11) Serves as assistant gunner to the Vehicle Commander.
      (12) Proficient in use and employment of the AAV Upgunned Weapons Station.
      (13) Operates vehicle communication suite utilizing proper procedures.
      (14) Maintains vehicle security.
      (15) Proficient in combat reporting procedures.
      (16) Conducts tactical maneuver as part of an AAV unit.

3. BILLET: Vehicle Commander, AAVP7. Senior 1833 Crewmember on the AAV. The Vehicle Commander leads a crew of two and is responsible for the
maintenance and operation of the AAVP7A1 and all associated collateral gear. The Vehicle Commander operates the Upgunned Weapons Station.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the crew.

(2) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned AAV.

(3) Responsible for embarked personnel.

(4) Responsible for requisite combat reporting to appropriate agencies.

(5) Maintains vehicle administrative documents.

(6) Executes Section Leader's commands related to employment and function of the AAV.

(7) Employs Upgunned Weapons Station.

(8) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(9) Proficient at recovery operations.

*NOTE: When the vehicle is employed by a more senior billet, (e.g., Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant) that member assumes the role of Vehicle Commander while assigned to that vehicle with command, tactical control, and weapons employment; administrative responsibility shall still reside to the vehicles assigned Vehicle Commander.

4. BILLET: Section Leader, AAVP7. Senior 1833 in the AAV Section with three or more vehicles. The Section Leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section. The Section Leader is positioned in the Upgunned Weapons Station. During operations, either in the water or on land, the Assault Amphibian Section Leader maintains control of the tactical movement and maneuver of the Assault Amphibian section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the section.

(2) Responsible for embarked personnel within section.

(3) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned section.

(4) Audits section's administrative documents.

(5) Executes Platoon Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV section.
(6) Employs section's Upgunned Weapons Stations in direct fire role.

(7) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(8) Proficient in combat reporting procedures.

(9) Advises supported unit commander.

(10) Proficient at recovery operations.

5. **BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, Assault Amphibian Platoon.** Senior 1833 and second in command of the Assault Amphibian Platoon. Positioned in the Upgunned Weapons Station of the platoon's logistics vehicle. The Platoon Sergeant is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles and all associated collateral gear. Advises the Assault Amphibian Platoon Commander on training, welfare, administrative functions, and tactical employment of the platoon.

   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines within platoon.

      (2) Responsible for vehicles and collateral equipment within platoon.

      (3) Audits administrative documents and assists in all maintenance management functions of the platoon.

      (4) Employs Upgunned Weapons Stations.

      (5) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

      (6) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned platoon.

      (7) Proficient in combat reporting procedures.

      (8) Advises supported unit commander.

      (9) Assumes command in Platoon Commanders absence.

      (10) Coordinates embarkation of vehicles and platoon.

      (11) Coordinates logistical support for Assault Amphibian platoon.

      (12) Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.

      (13) Proficient at recovery operations.

6. **BILLET: Crewmember, AAVC7.** Junior 1833 Crewmember on the AAV.

   a. Core Capabilities:
(1) Executes Vehicle Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAVC7.

(2) Drives AAV.

(3) Assist Vehicle Commander with acquiring targets.

(4) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(5) Assists in vehicle operational checks of AAV.

(6) Assists with Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services.

(7) Assists in embarking and debarking of the infantry.

(8) Warns of violations to the watertight integrity of the hull.

(9) Assists embarked personnel in vehicle evacuation and egress.

(10) Serves as assistant gunner to the Vehicle Commander.

(11) Proficient in use and employment of the M240.

(12) Operates vehicle communication suite utilizing proper procedures.

(13) Maintains vehicle security.

(14) Familiar with AAVC7 communications equipment and, when equipped, Network on the Move (NOTM).

(15) Proficient in combat reporting procedures.

(16) Conducts tactical maneuver as part of a Command section.

7. BILLET: Vehicle Commander, AAVC7. Senior 1833 Crewmember on the AAVC7. The Vehicle Commander leads a crew of two and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAVC7 and all associated collateral gear. The Vehicle Commander station mounts the defensive medium machine gun.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the crew.

(2) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned AAV.

(3) Responsible for embarked personnel.

(4) Responsible for requisite combat reporting to appropriate agencies.

(5) Maintains vehicle administrative documents.
(6) Executes Section Leader's commands related to employment and function of the AAV.

(7) Employs medium machine gun in defense of vehicle.

(8) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(9) Familiar with AAVC7 communications equipment and when equipped Network on the Move (NOTM).

(10) Proficient in recovery operations.

8. BILLET: Section Leader, Assault Amphibian Command Section. Senior 1833 Crewmember in the AAV Section with two or more vehicles, with at least one of the vehicles an AAVC7. The Section Leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in their section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for AAV Crewmembers within section.

(2) Responsible for embarked personnel within section.

(3) Audits section's administrative documents.

(4) Executes supported unit commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV Command Section.

(5) Employs section's Upgunned Weapons Stations and medium machine guns in defensive role.

(6) Advises supported unit commander on AAV capabilities/limitations and employment.

(7) Familiar with AAVC7 communications equipment.

9. BILLET: Crewmember, Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. Junior 1833 Crewmember on the AAV.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Executes Vehicle Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV.

(2) Drives AAV.

(3) Assist Vehicle Commander with acquiring targets.

(4) Assists in vehicle operational checks of AAV.

(5) Assists with AAV Preventative Maintenance Checks and Services.

(6) Warns of violations to the watertight integrity of the hull.
(7) Serves as assistant gunner to the Vehicle Commander.

(8) Maintains vehicle security.

(9) Assists in deploying Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.

10. **BILLET: Vehicle Commander, Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.** Senior 1833 Crewmember on the AAV with Mk 154 kit installed. The Vehicle Commander leads a crew of two and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAVP7A1 and all associated collateral gear. The Vehicle Commander operates the Upgunned Weapons Station.

   a. **Core Capabilities:**

      (1) Responsible for the AAV Crewmembers.

      (2) Responsible for Mk 154 Mod 0 kit.

      (3) Maintains vehicle administrative documents.

      (4) Executes Section or Team Leader's commands related to employment and function of the Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.

      (5) Employs Upgunned Weapons Station.

11. **BILLET: Team Leader, Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.** Senior 1833 Crewmember in the AAV Team with four or more vehicles, at least two vehicles have Mk 154 kits installed. The Team Leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section. The Team Leader is positioned in the Upgunned Weapons Station. During water operations, either in the ocean or river, the Assault Amphibian Team Leader maintains control of the tactical movement of the Assault Amphibian team.

   a. **Core Capabilities:**

      (1) Responsible for the AAV Crewmembers within team.

      (2) Responsible for any embarked personnel.

      (3) Audits team's administrative documents.

      (4) Executes Breach Force Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV Team.

      (5) Employs team's Upgunned Weapons Stations.

      (6) Advises supported unit commander on AAV capabilities/limitations and employment.

12. **BILLET: Section Leader, Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.** Senior 1833 Crewmember in the AAV Section with eight or more vehicles, at least four vehicles have Mk 154 kits installed. The Section Leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section. The Section Leader is positioned in the Upgunned Weapons Station. During water operations, either in the ocean or river, the Assault
Amphibian Section Leader maintains control of the tactical movement of the Assault Amphibian section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for AAV Crewmembers within section.

(2) Responsible for embarked personnel within section.

(3) Audits section's administrative documents.

(4) Executes Breach Force Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV section.

(5) Employs section's Upgunned Weapons Stations.

(6) Advises supported unit commander on AAV capabilities/limitations and employment.

13. BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, Assault Amphibian Mobility/Countermobility (MCM) Platoon. Senior 1833 and second in command of the Assault Amphibian MCM Platoon. Positioned in the Upgunned Weapons Station of the platoon's logistics vehicle. The Platoon Sergeant is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles and all associated collateral gear. Advises the Assault Amphibian Platoon Commander on training, welfare, administrative functions and tactical employment of the platoon.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for AAV Crewmembers within platoon.

(2) Responsible for vehicles and collateral equipment within platoon.

(3) Audits administrative documents and assists in all maintenance management functions of the platoon.

(4) Employs Upgunned Weapons Stations.

(5) Advises supported unit commander.

(6) Assumes command in Platoon Commander's absence.

(7) Coordinates embarkation of vehicles and platoon.

(8) Coordinates logistical support for Assault Amphibian platoon.

(9) Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.

14. BILLET: Vehicle Crew Evaluator. The Vehicle Crew Evaluator (VCE) serves as an instructor during training and as an evaluator during qualifications. VCE's must be used by the training unit to evaluate all aspects of gunnery. VCE's are used extensively in establishing and operating gunnery training and in evaluating crew proficiency in both individual skills and crew duties.

a. Core Capabilities:
(1) Understand all techniques and procedures related to gunnery training exercises.

(2) Trains and evaluates crews on the use of gunnery devices.

(3) Serves as an instructor during AAV gunnery training events during the conduct of the initial gunnery sustainment training.

(4) Performs the duties of an evaluator during qualification events for intermediate and advanced gunnery training.

(5) Records training and qualification information on appropriate score sheets and crew records.

15. BILLET: Company Master Gunner. The Company Master Gunner has completed the Master Gunner Common Core/Stryker Master Gunners course and is responsible to the Company Commander for the training and employment of organic weapons systems.

   a. Core Capabilities:

   (1) Advises the Company Commander in all matters pertaining to AAV gunnery an employment of all weapons systems within the company.

   (2) Evaluates and grades the company AAV crews during their semi-annual pre-qualification tables.

   (3) Allocates ammunition based on the company's annual training plan and quarterly training bulletin/plan. Reallocates ammunition as needed to support all training requirements.

   (4) Serves as company liaison to the battalion on all matters pertaining to range/MPRC as well as all other ranges and training locations aboard station.

   (5) Mentors, advises, and assists the company in AAV gunnery sustainment, preparation, and the Gunnery Skills Test (GST).

   (6) Serves as the Company Senior Instructor Operator for the AAV Turret Trainer (AAV-TT) to ensure that all AAV crews qualify through the training program.

16. BILLET: Company Logistics Chief. Second most senior 1833 Crewmember in the AA company who is responsible for all logistical requirements. He assists the Company Operations Chief and the Executive Officer in the logistical planning of the company.

   a. Core Capabilities:

   (1) Advises the Company Commander on unit logistical requirements.

   (2) Coordinates company logistical support.

   (3) Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.

   (4) Coordinates company embarkation plans.
(5) Monitors company hazardous material section.

(6) Assists the Executive Officer and Company Operations Chief in planning future operations.

(7) Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.

(8) Trains AA Platoon Sergeants in performance of duties.

(9) Mentors the Staff Non-Commissioned Officers of the company.

17. **BILLET: Company Operations Chief.** Senior 1833 Marine in the AA company. Advises the Company Commander on training and operations of the AA company.

   a. Core Capabilities:

   (1) Advises the Company Commander in monitoring, conducting, reporting, and supervising unit training.

   (2) Coordinates and evaluates company individual and unit training.

   (3) Conducts quartering party operations.

   (4) Coordinates COC setup and operations.

   (5) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in combat operations center.

   (6) Coordinates assembly area activities.

   (7) Coordinates operations section embarkation plans.

   (8) Assists the Executive Officer in planning future operations.

   (9) Advises the AA Company Commander on all 1833 Marine matters.

   (10) Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.


   (12) Mentors the Staff Non-Commissioned Officers of the company.

18. **BILLET: Battalion Master Gunner.** The Battalion Master Gunner is the senior Master Gunner billet in the AA Battalion. Responsible to the Battalion Commander for the training and employment of all organic weapons systems. The Battalion Master Gunner oversees and mentors the Company Master Gunners in the performance of their duties.

   a. Core Capabilities:

   (1) Advises the Battalion Commander and Operations Officer on all matters pertaining to gunnery, and employment of all weapons systems within the battalion.
(2) Evaluates and grades the battalion's crews during qualification.

(3) Allocates ammunition based on the battalion's annual training plan and quarterly training bulletin/plan. Reallocates ammunition as needed to support all training requirements.

(4) Serves as liaison to range operations on all matters pertaining to range/MPRC, as well as all other ranges/training locations aboard station.

(5) Develops, advises, and assists the Company Master Gunners.

(6) Serves as the Battalion Master Instructor Operator for the AAV Turret Trainer (AAV-TT) to ensure that all AAV crews qualify through the training program.

19. BILLET: Battalion Logistics Chief. Senior 1833 Crewmember in the battalion logistics section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the logistics officer on unit logistical requirements.

(2) Organize, train, and supervise the battalion combat trains during operations.

(3) Coordinates battalion logistical support.

(4) Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.

(5) Determines logistical requirements for unit training.

(6) Coordinates battalion embarkation plans.

(7) Monitors battalion hazardous material section.

(8) Serves as senior enlisted in the combat trains who supervises synchronization of functions of logistics at all echelons of support.

(9) Develops, coordinates, and supervises the execution of all the internal and external logistical support for the battalion as directed by the Battalion Commander.

(10) Oversees the professional development of all enlisted Marines within the S-4 through professional military education, experiences, and personal example.

(11) Supervises the maintenance and priorities of work as it pertains to facilities, to include improvements.
(12) Coordinate with Base Installation and Logistics (I&L) for standard upkeep and repairs to battalion facilities.

(13) Coordinates Logistics Operations Center (LOC) setup and activities in conjunction with COC.

(14) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in LOC support area.

20. BILLET: Battalion Operations Chief. Senior 1833 Crewmember in the battalion operations section.

   a. Core Capabilities:

   (1) Advises the operations officer on unit training.

   (2) Coordinates battalion individual and unit training.

   (3) Provides input to amphibious landing plans.

   (4) Assists in verifying DRRS-MC data and timely submission.

   (5) Provides input into the different echelons of deployment requirements.

   (6) Coordinates COC setup and ensures efficient operation.

   (7) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in combat operations center.

   (8) Coordinates assembly area activities.

   (9) Evaluates individual and unit training.

   (10) Coordinates operations section embarkation plans.

   (11) Assists the operations officer in planning future operations.

   (12) Manages, provides career counseling, and assigns all 1833 Marines in the battalion.

   (13) Manages all required MOS schools and additional duty schools for the battalion.

   (14) Advises the AA Battalion Commander on all 1833 Marine matters.

   (15) Certified as an Operations and Tactics Instructor (OTI) prior to assuming the billet. See MCO 3502.7 and Command and Control T&R Manual (2000-Level Individual Tasks) for specific functions/responsibilities.
### 7005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-1001</td>
<td>Egress the AAV (S)</td>
<td>7-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-1002</td>
<td>Prepare AAV for Water Operations</td>
<td>7-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-1003</td>
<td>Evacuate Embarked Personnel (S)</td>
<td>7-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-1004</td>
<td>Maneuver AAV Afloat (L)</td>
<td>7-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-1005</td>
<td>Tow AAV Afloat</td>
<td>7-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-1006</td>
<td>Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping</td>
<td>7-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-1001</td>
<td>Communicate Using Visual Signals</td>
<td>7-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-1002</td>
<td>Identify Signs/Markers</td>
<td>7-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-1003</td>
<td>Operate the Communications Suite (S/L)</td>
<td>7-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1001</td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons</td>
<td>7-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1002</td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>7-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1003</td>
<td>Conduct Gunnery Skills Test</td>
<td>7-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1004</td>
<td>Perform Gun Table I (S/L)</td>
<td>7-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1005</td>
<td>Conduct Bore sighting</td>
<td>7-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1006</td>
<td>Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>7-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1007</td>
<td>Engage Targets (S/L)</td>
<td>7-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1008</td>
<td>Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher (S/L)</td>
<td>7-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-1001</td>
<td>Apply Tactical Driving Techniques (S/L)</td>
<td>7-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-1002</td>
<td>Deploy AAV Immediate Action Drills (S/L)</td>
<td>7-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-1003</td>
<td>Utilize a Range Card (S/L)</td>
<td>7-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1001</td>
<td>Apply Risk Management</td>
<td>7-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1002</td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services</td>
<td>7-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1003</td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Communications Equipment</td>
<td>7-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1004</td>
<td>Maintain SL-3</td>
<td>7-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1005</td>
<td>Conduct Operational Checks</td>
<td>7-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1006</td>
<td>Start the Engine by Alternate Means</td>
<td>7-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1007</td>
<td>Identify a System Malfunction</td>
<td>7-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1008</td>
<td>Embark Personnel onto an AAV</td>
<td>7-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1009</td>
<td>Drive the AAV on Land (S/L)</td>
<td>7-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1010</td>
<td>Tow AAV on Land</td>
<td>7-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1011</td>
<td>Operate Driver's Vision Enhancer (DVE) (S/L)</td>
<td>7-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1012</td>
<td>Operate Smoke Generation System (S/L)</td>
<td>7-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1013</td>
<td>Conduct Demolition</td>
<td>7-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-1014</td>
<td>Provide Ordnance Vehicle Logbook Information</td>
<td>7-39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2000 Level Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-2001</td>
<td>Prepare for Waterborne Operations</td>
<td>7-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-2002</td>
<td>Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel (P)</td>
<td>7-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-AMPH-2003</td>
<td>Control Unit Maneuver Afloat (L)</td>
<td>7-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CBTS-2001</td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System</td>
<td>7-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CBTS-2002</td>
<td>Install Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System</td>
<td>7-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CBTS-2003</td>
<td>Load Ordnance Material</td>
<td>7-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CBTS-2004</td>
<td>Deploy Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System</td>
<td>7-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CBTS-2005</td>
<td>Unload Ordnance</td>
<td>7-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CBTS-2006</td>
<td>Remove Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System</td>
<td>7-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CBTS-2007</td>
<td>Advise Breach Force Commander</td>
<td>7-47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-2001</td>
<td>Respond to Signs/Markers</td>
<td>7-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-2002</td>
<td>Control Radio Communications</td>
<td>7-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-2003</td>
<td>Submit Reports (S/L)</td>
<td>7-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-2004</td>
<td>Prepare Command Communication Suite</td>
<td>7-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-2005</td>
<td>Install a Wire Communication Hot/Gun Loop</td>
<td>7-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-2006</td>
<td>Develop an Operation Order</td>
<td>7-51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-CMDC-2007</td>
<td>Issue a Fragmentary Order</td>
<td>7-51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-COND-2001</td>
<td>March with a Fighting Load</td>
<td>7-52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2001</td>
<td>Conduct Detailed Disassembly/Assembly</td>
<td>7-52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2002</td>
<td>Inspect Headspace and Timing</td>
<td>7-53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2003</td>
<td>Direct Boresighting of Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>7-54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2004</td>
<td>Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>7-54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2005</td>
<td>Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)</td>
<td>7-55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2006</td>
<td>Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>7-56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2007</td>
<td>Direct Section Fires (S/L)</td>
<td>7-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2008</td>
<td>Install/Remove M240</td>
<td>7-58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2009</td>
<td>Engage a Target with M240 (S/L)</td>
<td>7-58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-SUPT-2001</td>
<td>Advise Infantry on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Employment</td>
<td>7-59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-SUPT-2002</td>
<td>Support Unit Specified Tasks</td>
<td>7-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-SUPT-2003</td>
<td>Direct Recovery Operations</td>
<td>7-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-2001</td>
<td>Conduct Mounted Navigation</td>
<td>7-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-2002</td>
<td>Advise in the Development of Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace Products</td>
<td>7-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-2003</td>
<td>Conduct Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)</td>
<td>7-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-2004</td>
<td>Supervise Quartering Party Duties</td>
<td>7-63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-2005</td>
<td>Lead an AA Unit in Offensive Operations</td>
<td>7-64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-2006</td>
<td>Develop a Range Card (S/L)</td>
<td>7-64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-2007</td>
<td>Create a Fire Plan Sketch (S/L)</td>
<td>7-65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TAC-2009</td>
<td>Lead an AA Unit in Defensive Operations</td>
<td>7-66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TRNG-2001</td>
<td>Evaluate AAV Gunnery</td>
<td>7-67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TRNG-2002</td>
<td>Develop Surface Danger Zones (SDZs)</td>
<td>7-68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TRNG-2003</td>
<td>Design Ranges in Support of Expeditionary Operations</td>
<td>7-68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TRNG-2004</td>
<td>Facilitate Employment of Vehicle Mounted Weapons Systems</td>
<td>7-69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TRNG-2005</td>
<td>Facilitate Simulation Training Program</td>
<td>7-69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TRNG-2006</td>
<td>Manage Gunnery Training Program</td>
<td>7-70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TRNG-2007</td>
<td>Manage Unit Training Program</td>
<td>7-71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TRNG-2008</td>
<td>Develop Unit Exercise</td>
<td>7-71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-TRNG-2009</td>
<td>Lead an After Action Review (AAR)</td>
<td>7-72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-2001</td>
<td>Conduct a Risk Assessment</td>
<td>7-72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-2002</td>
<td>Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services</td>
<td>7-73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-2003</td>
<td>Supervise Operational Checks</td>
<td>7-74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-2004</td>
<td>Initiate Administrative Maintenance Process</td>
<td>7-74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-2005</td>
<td>Monitor the Maintenance Process</td>
<td>7-75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-2006</td>
<td>Maintain Logbook</td>
<td>7-75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-2007</td>
<td>Conduct Vehicle Inspection</td>
<td>7-76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-VOPS-2008</td>
<td>Install/Remove Special Mission Kits</td>
<td>7-77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enclosure (1)
7006. 1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS

1833-AMPH-1001: Egress the AAV (S)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 48 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged AAV.

STANDARD: To reach the surface of the water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Unfasten seatbelt.
2. Unlock assigned hatch.
3. Employ life support equipment as required.
4. Exit vehicle.
5. Gain access to surface.

REFERENCES: AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>FET (MAET)</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This task shall be trained using the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). Egress drills can be conducted on AAV while parked at the ramp or during field exercises, but the training will not be satisfied by any means other than SVET.

MISCELLANEOUS:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Reserve training will take place at Initial Location for Mobilization (ILOC) or during two week annual training (AT).

1833-AMPH-1002: Prepare AAV for Water Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL
CONDITION: Given an AAV unit, checklists, order, and equipment.

STANDARD: To ensure vehicle readiness to perform waterborne operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct pre-water operations checklist.
2. Complete vehicle manifest.
3. Assist in conducting embarked troop safety brief.
4. Submit completed pre-water operations checklists to unit leader.
5. Assist in conduct of surf observation report.
6. Conduct splash team member procedures.
7. Identify designated Rescue Team (RT).

REFERENCES:
1. TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1833-AMPH-1003: Evacuate Embarked Personnel (S)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne AAV with passengers, while acting as a member of a crew.

STANDARD: To prevent injury or loss of life.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform driver emergency procedures afloat.
2. Perform crewmember emergency procedures afloat.
3. Perform water survival techniques.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:
**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

---

**1833-AMPH-1004:** Maneuver AAV Afloat (L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV and crew.

**STANDARD:** To safely enter/exit to/from shore without damage to equipment or personnel.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Ensure water tight integrity.
2. Follow land to water procedures.
3. Utilize bow plane.
4. Employ water driving techniques.
5. Follow water to land procedures.

**REFERENCES:**
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
1833-AMPH-1005: Tow AAV Afloat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: A safe haven is, "a beach or an amphibious ship." A boat haven is, "a well deck capable platform able to embark and protect a small craft from seas or affect repairs to a damaged craft."

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and disabled AAV in a body of water, associated crews, and SL-3.

STANDARD: To return the disabled vehicle to the nearest safe haven/boat haven.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess the environment/situation.
2. Conduct troop transfer as necessary.
3. Determine appropriate waterborne towing method.
4. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.
5. Prepare towing vehicle for towing.
6. Position the rescue vehicle in accordance with the appropriate towing method.
7. Attach tow lines.
8. Secure hatches as required.
9. Tow disabled vehicle.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1833-AMPH-1006: Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew and amphibious shipping.
**STANDARD:** To recover and launch from a well deck without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Receive the order.
2. Negotiate waterway obstacles.
3. Perform embarkation procedures.
4. Secure vehicle with lashing assembly.
5. Perform debarkation procedures.
6. Conduct tactical launch.
7. Maneuver within approach lane.
8. Respond to tactical control measures.
9. Transition to shore.
10. Identify designated Rescue Team (RT).

**REFERENCES:**
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3 - Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task.

---

**1833-CMDC-1001:** Communicate Using Visual Signals

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV with crew and an operating area.

**STANDARD:** To control movement of the vehicle(s).

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Employ day ground guiding signals.
2. Employ night ground guiding signals.
3. Employ day tactical hand and arm signals.
4. Employ night tactical hand and arm signals.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Special equipment is required for night operations (i.e. cone lights, chemical light sticks, etc.).

1833-CMDC-1002: Identify Signs/Markers

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights, and markers.

STANDARD: To assist in the control of Assault Amphibious Vehicle movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognize standard beach signs/markers.
2. Recognize standard naval signs/markers.
3. Recognize standard tactical signs/markers.
4. Recognize standard logistical signs/markers.
5. Recognize waterway navigational signs/markers (red right returning).

REFERENCES:
1. COMDTINST M16500.7A Aids to Navigation Manual—Administration
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1833-CMDC-1003: Operate the Communications Suite (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and radio net.

STANDARD: To communicate with crew and other elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the communications equipment for operations.
2. Operate the Combat Vehicle Crewman (CVC) helmet.
3. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
4. Operate the audio frequency amplifier.
5. Operate the receiver/transmitters.
6. Shut down communication suite.


SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-GNRY-1001: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given MK19, M240B, and M2 machine guns and references.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clear the machine guns.
2. Perform safety check.
3. Disassemble the weapon.
4. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components.
5. Report worn or defective parts.
6. Assemble the weapon.
7. Perform function check.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50; M2, Heavy Barrel
2. TM 08521A-OR/1 Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, MK19 MOD 3
3. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
1833-GNRY-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. PMCS turret exterior.
2. PMCS turret interior.
3. Lubricate turret components.
4. Operate electrical components.
5. Operate manual components.
6. Complete UGWS pre-operation checklist.

REFERENCES:
1. TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
3. TM 9-1040-267-20&P ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE MANUAL, M 257 GRENADE LAUNCHER

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Requires M257 test equipment.

1833-GNRY-1003: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, all associated training devices, and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies prior to the conduct of live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform recognition of threat vehicles and theater threat vehicles (within 10 min).
2. Identify ammunition (within 3 min).
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on MK19 machine gun (within 8 min).
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M2 machine gun (within 21 min).
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M240 machine gun (within 7 min).
6. Perform misfire procedures on turret mounted weapons (within 5 min).
7. Load/Unload turret mounted weapons (within 20 min).

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3–10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3–20.21–1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
3. TM 02498B–10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50; M2, Heavy Barrel
5. TM 10004A–10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A159 Ctg, 7.62mm Dummy M172 Linked</td>
<td>100 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A560 Ctg,.50 Cal Dummy M2</td>
<td>200 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B472 Ctg, 40mm Dummy M922 / M922A1</td>
<td>96 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is a pre-requisite event required to be conducted prior to all AAV vehicle mounted live-fire events.

1833–GNRY–1004: Perform Gun Table I (S/L)

EVALUATION–CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with associated equipment and crew.

STANDARD: To complete all required tasks in accordance with TC 3–20.21–1 prior to conducting live-fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills (within 28 sec).
2. Perform crew roll over drills (within 28 sec).
3. Send and receive radio reports (within 15 min).
4. Send and receive digital reports (within 10 min).
5. Evacuate an injured crewmember (within 28 sec).
6. Boresight an AAV (within 15 min).
7. Mount and remove turret mounted weapons (within 20 min).
REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
4. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Performance steps 5 and 7 are MOS-Specific Physical Standards required for the MOS of 1833. See Appendix G for further detail.

1833-GNRY-1005: Conduct Boresighting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, machine guns, boresight kit, boresight target, associated SL-3, and references, while acting as a member of a crew.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment, within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
2. Align MK19 aiming point.
3. Align M2 aiming point.
4. Conduct day sight boresight.
5. Conduct thermal sight boresight.
6. As required, perform mantlet sight alignment procedures.
7. Conduct retention procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
2. TM 8F419D-OI Technical Manual for M36E-T1 Thermal Sight System

MISCELLANEOUS:
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of Gun Table I.

1833-GNRY-1006: Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a boresighted AAVP7 with crew, ammunition, and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD: To center the beaten zone on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify thumb slide position.
2. Fire the MK19.
3. Adjust sight as required.
4. Fire the M2.
5. Make adjustments to T&E as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE: 1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 2. DODICs B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555. 3. 50 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576, and 16 rounds of DODIC B542 or BA12 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked</td>
<td>16 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked</td>
<td>16 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.
1833-GNRY-1007: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gunnery that demonstrates engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s).

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with weapons, ammunition, and a fire command, while utilizing the DIDEA process.

STANDARD: To achieve desired effects on targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to fire command.
2. Perform One Defensive Engagement: Day and Night.
4. Perform One Short Halt or Traffic Control Point: Day OR Night.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATION EVALUATION:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIMULATED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE: 1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 2. DODICs B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555/A576. 3. 175 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

DODIC | QUANTITY
--- | ---
A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked | 175 rounds per Marine
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked | 175 rounds per Marine
BA21 Ctg, 40mm Frac MK281 MOD 1 Linked | 96 rounds per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,
MISCELLANEOUS:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**
1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire two practices, one qualification, and a night shoot.
3. Gunners will utilize/validate a range card to engage targets.
4. Short-range is 400-800m; long-range is 800-1800m.
5. All steps can be performed in degraded gunnery (non-electric).

---

**1833–GNYR–1008:** Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVP7 with crew and SL-3.

**STANDARD:** In order to provide obscuration for the vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Load grenade launcher.
2. Close all hatches.
3. Clear all personnel to rear of launcher firing zone (164 ft/50m).
4. Ensure power to vehicle and UGWS.
5. Arm smoke grenade launcher.
6. Fire grenade launcher(s).
7. As required, perform immediate action.

**REFERENCES:**
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GG24-</td>
<td>Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dunded
MISCELLANEOUS:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**
1. Don't place any part of body in front of launchers while loading or unloading.
2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

---

**1833-TAC-1001:** Apply Tactical Driving Techniques (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to provide the AAV crewmember employment considerations of their vehicle, and individual actions to take, within the conduct of larger movement techniques inclusive of: formations, movement techniques, and immediate actions.

**BILLETS:** Driver

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV with crew and associated equipment, while operating as part of a unit conducting operations on land.

**STANDARD:** To position the vehicle in response to a threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Utilize terrain to avoid exposure to the threat.
2. Utilize dispersion with respect to METT-T.
3. Maintain speed that supports the scheme of maneuver.
4. Respond to threats.

**REFERENCES:**
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 3–10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3–10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>DVTE</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**MISCELLANEOUS:**
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The following formations must be demonstrated: column, vee, wedge, echelon left/right, unit on-line, and herringbone. The following movement techniques must be demonstrated: bounding overwatch, successive bounding, and travelling overwatch.

1833-TAC-1002: Deploy AAV Immediate Action Drills (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Immediate action drills include, but are not limited to, the following: Actions upon contact, incoming artillery drill, air attack, and IED or possible IED.

BILLETS: Driver

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Acting as a crewmember in an AAV unit conducting operations on land.

STANDARD: To position the vehicle appropriately in response to enemy contact and terrain without hesitation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Deploy ground attack immediate action drills.
2. Deploy air attack immediate action drills.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>DVTE</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
1833-TAC-1003: Utilize a Range Card (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSgt

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV in a defensive position.

STANDARD: To engage targets with the Upgunned Weapons Station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Orient the range card.
2. Identify main terrain features.
3. Identify target reference point.
4. Identify vehicle location.
5. Identify sectors of fire.
6. Identify principal direction of fire (PDF) and final protective line (FPL).
7. Identify dead space.
8. Identify listening/observation point position(s).
9. Identify obstacles.
10. Apply the DIDEA process.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
1833-VOPS-1001: Apply Risk Management

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSgt, MSGT, MGYSgt

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV with crew, associate SL-3, and embarked personnel.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the safety of crew and embarked personnel.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Ensure serviceability of recovery equipment.
2. Ensure serviceability of waterborne equipment.
3. Secure equipment/cargo items on vehicle.
4. Enforce all safety regulations with embarked personnel.
5. Verify that all dismounted personnel maintain minimum safe distance from vehicle.

**REFERENCES:**
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCO 3500.27 Risk Management (RM)
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-VOPS-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSgt

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

**STANDARD:** To maintain vehicle readiness.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Perform PMCS on the vehicle exterior.
2. Perform PMCS on the vehicle engine compartment.
3. Perform PMCS on the vehicle driver and troop commander's station.
4. Perform PMCS on the vehicle troop compartment.
5. Perform PMCS on the vehicle while engine is running.
REFERENCES:
1. TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles

1833-VOPS-1003: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Communications Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To maintain equipment readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clean and inspect the amplifier.
2. Clean and inspect the intercom system components.
3. Clean and inspect the frequency selector control.
4. Clean and inspect the radios.
5. Clean and inspect the radio mounts.
6. Clean and inspect Combat Vehicle Crewman (CVC) helmet.

REFERENCES:
1. TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles

1833-VOPS-1004: Maintain SL-3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated SL-3, materials, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability/serviceability.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect the vehicle SL-3 equipment to determine accountability/serviceability.
2. Record inventory results on the SL-3 inventory sheet.
3. Annotate Report SL-3 discrepancies as required.
4. Reconcile SL-3 discrepancies as required.
5. Perform PMCS on SL-3 equipment.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

**1833-VOPS-1005:** Conduct Operational Checks

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV with associated SL-3, materials, and references.

**STANDARD:** To complete steps per the references and ensure the vehicle is operationally ready.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Perform pre-operation checks.
2. Perform during operation checks.
3. Perform at-halt operation checks.
4. Perform after operation checks.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles

**1833-VOPS-1006:** Start the Engine by Alternate Means

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a disabled AAV.

**STANDARD:** To place the vehicle in an operational status.
PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Follow the pre-operation checklist.
2. Follow slave start procedures, as required.
3. Follow tow start procedures, as required.
4. Apply freezing conditions starting procedures, as required.


1833-VOPS-1007: Identify a System Malfunction

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and the reference.

STANDARD: To return the vehicle to an operational status.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognize a malfunction symptom.
2. Follow the Troubleshooting Symptom Index.
3. As required, conduct emergency closing of the plenums.
4. As required, conduct bypass of the contact cooler.
5. Report all discrepancies to vehicle commander and/or maintenance personnel.
6. Assist maintenance personnel in performance of corrective maintenance and services.


1833-VOPS-1008: Embark Personnel onto an AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV conducting operations and serial assignment table.

STANDARD: To gain accountability while following all safety measures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assist the AAV Vehicle Commander with administering the safety brief.
2. Direct embarked personnel to properly stow all gear and equipment.
3. Direct embarked personnel to comply with safety requirements/procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
   of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

   RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
   Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

1833-VOPS-1009: Drive the AAV on Land (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew.

STANDARD: To negotiate various types of terrain/obstacles with no damage to
personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine direction of movement.
2. Determine location of terrain, personnel, and other vehicles around AAV.
3. Negotiate terrain.
4. Negotiate obstacles.

7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

   SIMULATION EVALUATION:
   SIMULATED SUITABILITY SIMULATOR UNIT OF MEASURE HOURS PM
   Partial S/L AAV-TT Crew Hours 2 Y

   RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
   Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
   Facility Code 17907 Tracked Vehicle Drivers Course
1833-VOPS-1010: Tow AAV on Land

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled AAV requiring recovery, and an operational AAV with associated crew and equipment.

STANDARD: To move the disabled AAV to the nearest collection point.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.
2. Prepare recovery vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables or tow bar.
4. Tow disabled AAV.


SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performance step 3 is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1833. See Appendix G for further detail.

1833-VOPS-1011: Operate Driver's Vision Enhancer (DVE) (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETs: Driver

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew, associated SL-3, materials, and references.

STANDARD: To provide increased situational awareness during low visibility.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct DVE pre-operation checks.
2. Install driver's unit and commander's display assembly.
3. Use driver's unit display assembly.
4. Remove driver's unit and commander's display assembly.
5. Maintain DVE.

REFERENCES:
2. TM 8H667-12&P/2 Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Drivers Vision Enhancer (DVE)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-VOPS-1012: Operate Smoke Generation System (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSgt

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew and associated SL-3.

STANDARD: To obscure the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the vehicle for smoke generation use.
2. Operate the system.
3. Shutdown the system.


SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

7-38  Enclosure (1)
**1833-VOPS-1013**: Conduct Demolition

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months  
**MOS PERFORMING**: 1833  
**GRADES**: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT  
**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING**: FORMAL  
**CONDITION**: Given demolition material and an order to destroy an AAV.  
**STANDARD**: To prevent enemy use of vehicle and/or its critical components.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS**:
1. Remove salvageable items.
2. Zero communications equipment.
3. Determine methods of destruction available.
4. Determine the items to be destroyed.
5. Destroy identified equipment.

**REFERENCES**:
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

---

**1833-VOPS-1014**: Provide Ordnance Vehicle Logbook Information

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months  
**MOS PERFORMING**: 1833  
**GRADES**: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT  
**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING**: FORMAL  
**CONDITION**: Given an AAV and ordnance vehicle logbook.  
**STANDARD**: To maintain vehicle historical information.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS**:
1. Inventory logbook.
2. Identify tabulated data.

**REFERENCES**:
1833-AMPH-2001: Prepare for Waterborne Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSgt

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AA unit, mission with commander's intent, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of equipment and personnel prior to conducting operations in water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct operational planning.
2. Assess surf composition data.
3. Conduct risk assessment.
4. Verify completion of pre-operational checks.
5. Conduct Surf Observation (SUROB) report, as required.
6. Complete Modified Surf Index (MSI), as required.
7. Submit report(s), as required.
8. Perform duties as splash team leader.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. BMU-HNDBK-5400.1 BEACHMASTER HANDBOOK
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17908 Amphibious Vehicle Training Area

1833-AMPH-2002: Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel (P)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSgt

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne AAV with crew and passengers.

STANDARD: To conduct a safe and orderly evacuation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Initiate emergency procedures afloat.
2. Supervise driver emergency procedures afloat.
3. Supervise crewmember emergency procedures afloat.
4. Conduct accountability.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>FET (MAET)</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: Hours captured in the crew evacuation task.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1833-AMPH-2003: Control Unit Maneuver Afloat (L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, mission, commander's intent, and an amphibious platform.

STANDARD: To embark/land surface assault elements and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive the order.
2. Negotiate waterway obstacles.
3. Perform embarkation procedures.
5. Perform debarkation procedures.
6. Conduct tactical launch.
7. Maneuver within approach lane.
8. Perform Wave Guide Officer responsibilities.
9. Respond to tactical control measures.
10. Transition to shore.
11. Perform duties of Rescue Team (RT).

REFERENCES:
1. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3 Wet Well Operations Manual
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task.

---

**1833-AMPH-2004:** Conduct Shore-to-Shore Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a water obstacle, personnel and equipment.

**STANDARD:** To negotiate a body of water without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Establish security posture.
2. Determine type of crossing.
3. Conduct site analysis.
4. Determine current velocity as required.
5. Determine slope of entry/exit points.
6. Determine/conduct amphibious drift technique as required.
7. Consolidate.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
1833-CBTS-2001: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given collateral equipment and references.

STANDARD: To maintain equipment in operating condition in accordance with TM 09962A-13&P/2_.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform before operation PMCS.
2. Perform during operation PMCS.
3. Perform after operation PMCS.
4. Perform scheduled maintenance PMCS.
5. Lubricate LMC components.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2_ U.S. MARINE CORPS TECHNICAL MANUAL, SYSTEM MANUAL, MARK 1 MOD 0 MINE CLEARANCE SYSTEM

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV crewmember when assigned to MK154.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2002: Install Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, 5-ton-capable lifting source, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare the Mk 1 Mod 0 for deployment in accordance with TM 09962A-13&P/2_.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Adhere to safety precautions.
2. Gather tools and equipment.
3. Follow installation procedures.
4. Bleed hydraulic system.
5. Conduct operational test.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2_ U.S. MARINE CORPS TECHNICAL MANUAL, SYSTEM MANUAL, MARK 1 MOD 0 MINE CLEARANCE SYSTEM

MISCELLANEOUS:
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV crewmember when assigned to MK154.
SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator’s License.

1833-CBTS-2003: Load Ordnance Material
EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
MOS PERFORMING: 1833
GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL
CONDITION: Given a Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, 5-ton-capable lifting source, collateral equipment and reference.
STANDARD: To prepare system for deployment in accordance with TM 09962A-13&P/2_.
PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Adhere to safety precautions.
2. Follow pre-deployment checks.
3. Follow rocket motor loading procedures.
4. Follow line charge fusing procedures.
5. Follow line charge loading procedures.
6. Connect rocket bridle cables.
7. Follow electrical connection of the line charge.
8. Perform rocket thrust positive connection.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2_ U.S. MARINE CORPS TECHNICAL MANUAL, SYSTEM MANUAL, MARK 1 MOD 0 MINE CLEARANCE SYSTEM

MISCELLANEOUS:
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV crewmember when assigned to MK154.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2004: Deploy Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with Mk 154 kit installed, ordnance, an obstacle, and required engineer support.

STANDARD: To launch and detonate ordnance in support of a breach in accordance with TM 09962A-13&P/2_.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Adhere to safety precautions.
2. Operate electrically.
3. Operate manually.
4. Follow ordnance malfunction procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2_ U.S. MARINE CORPS TECHNICAL MANUAL, SYSTEM MANUAL, MARK 1 MOD 0 MINE CLEARANCE SYSTEM

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J143 Rkt, Mtr 5 In MK22-4 F/MICLIC</td>
<td>3 rockets per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML25 Chg, Demo Linear HE LVT</td>
<td>3 charges per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML26 Chg, Demo Inert Linear LVT</td>
<td>3 charges per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17820 Engineer Qualification Range, Non-Standardized

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement.
2. Performed by AAV crewmember when assigned to MK154.
SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2005: Unload Ordnance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewmember

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, 5-ton-capable lifting source, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To clear the vehicle of munitions in accordance with TM 09962A-13&P/2_.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Adhere to safety precautions.
2. Follow disarming line charges procedures.
3. Follow unloading rocket procedures.
4. Follow off-loading line charge container procedures.
5. Follow line charge defusing procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2_ U.S. MARINE CORPS TECHNICAL MANUAL, SYSTEM MANUAL, MARK 1 MOD 0 MINE CLEARANCE SYSTEM

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV crewmember when assigned to MK154.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2006: Remove Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL
CONDITION: Given a Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, 5-ton-capable lifting source, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To return Assault Amphibious Vehicle to original configuration in accordance with TM 09962A-13&P/2_.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Adhere to safety precautions.
2. Gather tools and equipment.
3. Follow removal procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2 U.S. MARINE CORPS TECHNICAL MANUAL, SYSTEM MANUAL, MARK 1 MOD 0 MINE CLEARANCE SYSTEM

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV crewmember when assigned to MK154.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2007: Advise Breach Force Commander

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADeS: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV Mobility/Countermobility unit, required supported and supporting elements of a breach force, and an obstacle.

STANDARD: To ensure the Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System is deployed within its capabilities/limitations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on logistics requirements.
2. Recommend breach type.
3. Follow lane markers.
4. Provide recommendations on MCM AAV unit employment.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-17.4 Engineer Reconnaissance

MISCELLANEOUS:
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV Crewmembers when assigned to MK154.

1833-CMDC-2001: Respond to Signs/Markers

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights, and markers.

STANDARD: To control Assault Amphibious Vehicle movement/action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to standard beach signs/markers.
2. Respond to standard naval signs/markers.
3. Respond to standard tactical signs/markers.
4. Respond to standard logistical signs/markers.
5. Respond to standard waterway navigational signs/markers (red right returning).

REFERENCES:
1. COMDTINST M16500.3A Aids to Navigation Manual—Technical
2. COMDTINST M16500.7A Aids to Navigation Manual—Administration
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1833-CMDC-2002: Control Radio Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, and Communications Electronics Operating Instruction (CEOI).
STANDARD: To enforce voice radio procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify that all elements have the data and COMSEC.
3. Enforce standard radio procedures.
4. Adhere to local unit call signs and frequencies.
5. Enforce radio silence as required.
6. Determine the presence of Electronic Countermeasures (ECM).

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
2. MCRP 8-10B.10 Radio Operators Handbook

1833-CMDC-2003: Submit Reports (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given report formats and a situation requiring tactical or administrative information.

STANDARD: To inform higher headquarters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine type of report (administrative, logistical, operational or amphibious).
2. Generate report.
3. Forward report.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 2-10A.7 Reconnaissance Reports Guide
3. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.
1833-CMDC-2004: Prepare Command Communication Suite

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVC7.

**STANDARD:** To provide an operational system to the supported unit.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Account for system components.
2. Conduct PMCS of equipment.
3. Power-up APU.
4. Power-up communications suite.
5. Operate TOCNET.
6. Secure system after operation.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3

---

1833-CMDC-2005: Install a Wire Communication Hot/Gun Loop

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given two or more stationary AAVs and communication wire.

**STANDARD:** So that communications between vehicles can be made without emitting radio signals.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Ensure vehicle master power switch is set to 'ON'.
2. Turn on AM-7162.
3. Connect one wire end to each telephone/remote post on the AM-7162.
4. Run connected wire to the next AAV and connect in the same manner.
5. Conduct a communications check external to the AAV to verify that the last loop is operational.

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
2. TM 08636A-14/1A Operating and Maintenance Instructions with Parts Breakdown - Intercommunication Set AN/VIC-2
1833-CMDC-2006: Develop an Operation Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO          SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order from higher headquarters.

STANDARD: To support the achievement of higher headquarters intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct planning and analysis.
2. Determine assets available.
3. Issue Warning Order.
4. Conduct reconnaissance.
5. Coordinate with supported/supporting assets.
6. Complete planning.
7. Build terrain model/overlay.
8. Communicate the order to unit.

REFERENCES:
1. ATTP 3-21.71 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley)
2. JP 1-02 Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
3. MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
4. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1833-CMDC-2007: Issue a Fragmentary Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO          SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To provide additional direction and guidance to crew/unit which supports commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine areas from the HHQ order that apply.
2. Issue the Warning Order.
3. Update situation and provide additional information.
4. Build terrain model/overlay.
5. Communicate the Fragmentary Order.

REFERENCES:
1. ATTP 3-21.71 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley)
2. JP 1-02 Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
3. MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
4. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1833-COND-2001: March with a Fighting Load

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an individual weapon, a fighting load, and as part of a unit movement.

STANDARD: To complete a 15-kilometer march within four hours.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assemble the load for the march.
2. Don the load for the march.
3. Complete a 15 kilometer march.

REFERENCES: MCRP 8-10B.4 Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1833. Prior to executing this event, Marines will conduct a 5K and 10K march with the fighting load. Individual field equipment weight is not to exceed 55 pounds.

1833-GRNY-2001: Conduct Detailed Disassembly/Assembly

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 machine gun and reference.

STANDARD: To keep the weapon in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove extractor.
2. Remove bolt switch and stud.
3. Remove cocking lever.
4. Remove sear stop.
5. Remove sear slide.
6. Remove sear and spring.
7. Remove firing pin extension and firing pin.
8. Assemble bolt group.

REFERENCES: MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

1833-GNRY-2002: Inspect Headspace and Timing

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 machine gun and gauge.

STANDARD: To confirm that the weapon is prepared for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure weapon is clear.
2. Insert go/no go gauge.
3. Adjust headspace as required.
4. Cock charging handle.
5. Insert no fire gauge.
6. Attempt to fire.
7. Adjust timing as required.
8. Insert fire gauge.
9. Attempt to fire.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50; M2, Heavy Barrel
**1833-GNRY-2003:** Direct Boresighting of Upgunned Weapons Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVP7 with crew, machine guns, boresight kit, boresight target, associated SL-3, and references.

**STANDARD:** To provide a true sight line adjustment within 15 minutes.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
2. Align MK19 aiming point.
3. Align M2 aiming point.
4. Conduct day sight boresight.
5. Conduct thermal sight boresight.
6. As required, perform mantlet sight alignment procedures.
7. Conduct retention procedures.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
3. TM 8F419D-01 Technical Manual for M36E-T1 Thermal Sight System

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This task will be performed to standard as part of Gun Table I.

---

**1833-GNRY-2004:** Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVP7, inhibit zone aligning tool, and references.

**STANDARD:** To establish safe and effective fields of fire.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Prepare the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone.
2. Confirm the inhibit zone elevation.
3. Confirm Inhibit Zone 2 azimuths.
4. Confirm Inhibit Zone 1 azimuths.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
2. TM 10004A-25&P/2E Maintenance Instructions and Repair Parts List
   Organizational, Intermediate, and Depot Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)
   Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

   EQUIPMENT: Inhibit Zone Aligning Tool.

1833-GNRY-2005: Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETs: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and scenario.

STANDARD: To destroy or neutralize the threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

   SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: Hours are captured in each of the Gunnery Tables.

MISCELLANEOUS:

   ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard
during the gunnery tables.
1833-GNRY-2006: Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Enforces skills required of the Vehicle Commander to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

BILLETs: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated crew and equipment, a tactical scenario, and direction from higher.

STANDARD: So that the crew is effectively employed in support of concept of operations during direct fire engagements in accordance with MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Communicate weapon status.
2. Identify targets.
3. Communicate engagement criteria with driver.
4. Assess effects on target.
5. Orchestrate ammunition replenishment.
6. Enforce crew alert levels.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.

ORDNANCE: 300 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

DODIC
- A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked 300 rounds per AAV
- A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked 300 rounds per AAV
- BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked 64 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,
1833-GNRY-2007: Direct Section Fires (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Enforces skills required of the Section Leader to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

BILLETS: Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV section, a tactical scenario and direction from higher.

STANDARD: So that weapons are employed in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
2. Establish target priorities.
3. Establish target reference points (TRPs).
4. Define engagement areas (EAs).
5. Identify phase lines and trigger points.
6. Assign sectors of fires.
7. Issue appropriate fire commands.
8. Control rates of fire.
9. Send reports.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.

ORDNANCE: 300 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>300 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>300 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>64 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,
1833-GNRY-2008: Install/Remove M240

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVC7.

STANDARD: To provide security for the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Install pintle mount.
2. Secure machine gun mount on pintle.
3. Install machine gun on machine gun mount.
4. Remove machine gun from machine gun mount.
5. Remove machine gun mount from pintle.
6. Remove pintle mount.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

1833-GNRY-2009: Engage a Target with M240 (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVC7 with crew and SL-3.

STANDARD: To suppress the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare weapon for firing.
2. Load the M240.
3. Set estimated range.
4. Aim in on target.
5. Execute fire commands.
6. Change barrel, as required.
7. Troubleshoot M240, as required.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>ISMT</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: Turret required for full simulation.

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62</td>
<td>300 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833-SUPT-2001: Advise Infantry on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Employment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETs: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mechanized infantry mission and supported unit.

STANDARD: To properly employ AA unit in support of the concept of operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Brief the vehicle limitations/capabilities.
2. Brief the vehicle defense employment.
3. Brief the weapons tactical employment.
4. Brief C7 capabilities/limitations.
5. Brief the logistical requirements.
6. Brief the vehicle safety guidelines.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. ATTP 3-21.71 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley)
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
1833-SUPT-2002: Support Unit Specified Tasks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The AAV platoon is able to provide a myriad of support missions to their supported units, which include casualty evacuation, command and control, fire support team, support by fire, mortars transport, as well as resupply operations. The unit leader should be able to determine supportability based upon the associated specified task.

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, an operation order from higher, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver while achieving commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in the planning process.
2. Brief AAV capabilities to support CASEVAC, C2, FiST, SBF, EPW, and resupply operations.
3. Identify unit assigned task(s).
4. Determine requirement(s).
5. Task-organize.
6. Advise supported commander on employment techniques.

REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations

1833-SUPT-2003: Direct Recovery Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled/mired AAV and operational AAVs, with crews, and equipment.

STANDARD: To recover the disabled vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess situation.
2. As required, provide security.
3. Identify types of assets required.
4. As required, submit reports/requests.
5. Prepare disabled/mired vehicle.
6. Perform recovery procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
- Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Use of an AAVR7 for recovery operations is optional.
2. Recovery operations include all types of environments, land and water.

1833-TAC-2001: Conduct Mounted Navigation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, designated point(s), map, and a navigation device.

STANDARD: To maneuver to 8 of 10 designated points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Create route.
2. Prepare navigation devices (map, TACNAV, DAGR as required).
3. Conduct map orientation.
5. Move to a designated point.

REFERENCES: TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
1833-TAC-2002: Advise in the Development of Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace Products

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and an area of operations.

STANDARD: To evaluate enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities, and probable courses of action in accordance with MCRP 2-10B.1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Define the battlespace.
2. Describe the battlespace effects.
3. Evaluate the threat.
4. Determine threat course of action.

REFERENCES: MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-TAC-2003: Conduct Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: AAV units are capable of conducting operations in special terrain. Mobility limitations must be considered when employing the unit in jungle, desert, mountainous, urbanized terrains; and cold weather climates.

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and an operation order from higher.

STANDARD: To exploit vehicle capabilities within environmental limitations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct/receive IPB.
2. Identify mobility limitations.
3. Consider employment techniques.
4. Considerer maintenance requirements.
5. Install special mission kit(s) as required.
REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-TAC-2004: Supervise Quartering Party Duties

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operation order, and quartering party.

STANDARD: To prepare an assembly area for follow-on forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconnoiter the area.
2. Determine suitability.
3. Direct the establishment of security.
4. Clear area.
5. Direct improvements and security posture.

REFERENCES:
1. ATTP 3-21.71 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley)
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
1833-TAC-2005: Lead an AA Unit in Offensive Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Offensive operations consist of: movement to contact, mechanized attack, exploitation, and pursuit.

**BILLETs:** Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

**GRADES:** SGT, SSgt, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a unit and an operation order from higher.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver while achieving commander's intent.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Participate in the planning process.
2. Recommend task-organization to best support concept of operations.
3. Participate in IPB.
4. Advise on movement technique.
5. Control AAV employment during movements.
6. Direct AA unit fires in support of concept of operations.
7. Prepare for follow-on missions.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations

1833-TAC-2006: Develop a Range Card (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV in a defensive position, and a scenario.

**STANDARD:** To accurately depict the battlespace, geometries of fire, and enemy situation.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Identify main terrain features.
2. Identify target reference points.
3. Identify vehicle location.
4. Identify sectors of fire.
5. Identify PDF and FPL.
6. Identify dead space.
7. Identify listening/observation point position.
8. Identify obstacles.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833-TAC-2007: Create a Fire Plan Sketch (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETs: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a defensive position, scenario, and vehicle range cards.

STANDARD: To identify overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Combine vehicle range cards.
2. Illustrate vehicles and firing data.
3. Illustrate dead space.
4. Illustrate terrain.
5. Annotate orientation data.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,


EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSgt

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and fire support assets.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver with effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify desired effects.
2. Identify fire support coordinating measures.
3. Plan targets on known, suspected, and likely enemy positions, avenues of approach, and avenues of withdrawal.
4. Identify priority targets.
5. Submit list of targets to higher headquarters.
6. Receive target list from higher headquarters.
7. Integrate updated fire support plan with scheme of maneuver.
8. Disseminate fire support plan.
9. Continually refine the fire support plan based on METT-T.

REFERENCES: MCRP 3-31.6 Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (JFIRE)

1833-TAC-2009: Lead an AA Unit in Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and an operation order from higher.
STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver while achieving commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in the planning process.
2. Recommend task-organize to best support concept of operations.
3. Advise on AAV capabilities and limitations.
4. Recommend type of defense being conducted.
5. Consider quartering party procedures, as required.
6. Direct emplacement of AAVs.
7. Prepare unit fire plan sketch.
8. Direct rehearsals.
9. Advise displacement to alternate firing positions.
10. Direct AA unit fires in support of concept of operations.
11. Submit reports as required.
12. Prepare for follow-on missions.

REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations

1833-TRNG-2001: Evaluate AAV Gunnery

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crew Evaluator

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV unit, simulations, ammunition, evaluation material, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To identify gunnery training effectiveness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Provide input to the gunnery training plan.
2. Enforce gunnery training standards.
3. Train and evaluate GST and GT-I.
4. Train and augment evaluation of individuals/crews conducting UGWS qualification.
5. Conduct gunnery AAR.
6. Perform range duties and responsibilities.
7. Maintain gunnery records management.
8. Conduct IO/SIO training.
9. Perform other duties as directed by the Master Gunner.

REFERENCES:
1. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
2. MCO 3570.1_ RANGE SAFETY
3. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
5. TC 3-20.21-2 Vehicle Crew Evaluator Exportable Packet

1833-TRNG-2002: Develop Surface Danger Zones (SDZs)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETs:** Master Gunner

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSgt, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a requirement to conduct a live-fire training event.

**STANDARD:** To ensure all expended ordnance falls within a designated safe area.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Construct a small arms and machine gun SDZ.
2. Construct a hand grenade and rifle grenade SDZ.
3. Construct an AT-4 SDZ.
4. Construct a combined arms live-fire exercise SDZ.
5. Construct a linear mine charge SDZ.

**REFERENCES:**
1. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
2. MCO 3570.1_ RANGE SAFETY


**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETs:** Master Gunner

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSgt, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given the requirement to conduct training in the absence of preplanned ranges.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish safe and effective standards based training.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Coordinate with host nation as required.
2. Coordinate with higher headquarters.
3. Develop range regulations.
4. Construct ranges.
5. Establish communication requirements in support of range operations.
6. Determine resource requirements in support of range operations.

**REFERENCES:**
1. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
2. MCO 1553.3 Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
3. MCO 3570.1 RANGE SAFETY
5. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

1833-TRNG-2004: Facilitate Employment of Vehicle Mounted Weapons Systems

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Master Gunner
GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit preparing to conduct gunnery qualification.

STANDARD: To engage threats.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify the geometry of fires of individual weapons in support of maneuver.
2. Identify methods of fire and control.
3. Identify limitations/capabilities of vehicle mounted weapons.
4. Identify considerations in the employment of vehicle obscuration.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50; M2, Heavy Barrel
3. TM 08521A/09761a-23&p/2a Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
4. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live-fire (Gate to Live-Fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

1833-TRNG-2005: Facilitate Simulation Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Master Gunner
GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit annual training plan.

STANDARD: To achieve set standards through simulation prior to the use of actual vehicles, weapons, and ammunition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training hardware.
2. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training software.
3. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training scenarios.
4. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training facilities.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1 Advanced Gunnery Training System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Master, Senior, and Instructor Operator Certificate for Simulator.

1833-TRNG-2006: Manage Gunnery Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given unit annual training plan.

STANDARD: To maintain gunnery proficiency.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify requirements for the short-range training plan.
2. Identify requirements for the mid-range training plan.
3. Plan range/training area availability in RFMSS.
4. Track, forecast, and submit ammunition requests in TAMIS.
5. Supervise implementation of the unit gunnery training program.
6. Determine the units gunnery proficiency and formulate corrective action.
7. Supervise all testing on all GST task specific to their weapon platform.

REFERENCES:
1. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
2. MCO 3570.1 RANGE SAFETY
3. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
6. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training
7. NAVMC 8011 Class V Material Allowance for Training, Programmed Testing, and Security
8. TC 25-8 Training Ranges
9. TC 3-20.21-2 Vehicle Crew Evaluator Exportable Packet

1833-TRNG-2007: Manage Unit Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure combat readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify Mission Essential Task List (METL).
2. Assess unit readiness.
3. Prioritize training requirements.
4. Develop short and mid-range plans as appropriate.
5. Schedule required training.
6. Schedule prime time for training cycles.
7. Conduct backward planning.
8. Identify available training resources and align with training priorities.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553.3 Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1833-TRNG-2008: Develop Unit Exercise

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Operations Chief

GRADES: GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and commander's training guidance.
**STANDARD:** To ensure combat readiness.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Identify collective and individual training events from T&R manuals.
2. Identify live, virtual, and constructive training venues.
3. Identify resource requirements.
4. Develop a scheme of maneuver.
5. Develop opposing force plan.
7. Develop after action review.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCO 1553.3_ Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

---

**1833-TRNG-2009:** Lead an After Action Review (AAR)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a unit and a completed event/operation.

**STANDARD:** To enhance combat readiness.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Designate area for after action.
2. Account for all unit and individual equipment.
3. Discuss observations of personnel during event.
4. Engage all personnel for inputs.
5. Compile information obtained and submit to higher.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
2. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

---

**1833-VOPS-2001:** Conduct a Risk Assessment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL
CONDITION: Given scenario and environment.

STANDARD: To identify and mitigate hazards.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct mission analysis and assess the situation.
2. Develop safety plans.
3. Implement safety plans.
4. Supervise implementation of safety plans.

REFERENCES:
1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCO 3500.27 Risk Management (RM)
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

1833-VOPS-2002: Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To ensure PMCS is conducted in accordance with TI 09674A-OD/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify PMCS of the vehicle components are completed.
2. Verify PMCS of the Upgunned Weapons Station is completed.
3. Verify PMCS of the weapons are completed.
4. Verify PMCS of the communication equipment is completed.
5. Verify PMCS of the special mission kits are completed.
6. Verify lubrication is completed.
7. Conduct reconciliation.
8. Verify operational checklists are completed.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles
1833-VOPS-2003: Supervise Operational Checks

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV with crew.

**STANDARD:** To verify operations status/report discrepancies.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Verify completion of pre-operation checklist.
2. Verify completion of during operation checklist.
3. Verify completion of at-halt operation checklist.
4. Verify completion of after operation checklist.
5. Verify completion of pre-water operation checklist.
6. Verify completion of vehicle logbook.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TI 09674A-0D/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles

---

1833-VOPS-2004: Initiate Administrative Maintenance Process

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV, identified discrepancy, and GCSS-MC access.

**STANDARD:** To ensure maintenance action items are recorded for repair.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Open service request in GCSS-MC.
2. Create task in GCSS-MC.
3. Submit to organizational maintenance.
5. Complete equipment service requests.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: GCSS-MC simulation virtual environment required for training.

1833-VOPS-2005: Monitor the Maintenance Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Reconciliation is a formal process designed to bring together the operator and maintenance section. This process is designed to ensure that all maintenance discrepancies are properly identified and captured within GCSS-MC in an effort to gain a better understanding of vehicle readiness as it relates to the operational environment.

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Maintenance Production Report and GCSS-MC access.

STANDARD: To ensure completion of preventative/corrective maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconcile discrepancies.
2. Reconcile job status.
3. Reconcile parts status.
4. Reconcile job completion.
5. Close task upon completion.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: GCSS-MC simulation virtual environment required for training.

1833-VOPS-2006: Maintain Logbook

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander
**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an ordnance vehicle logbook.

**STANDARD:** To document operational history of vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Audit logbook.
2. Make daily entries.
3. Make monthly entries.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
3. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

---

**1833-VOPS-2007:** Conduct Vehicle Inspection

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETs:** Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSMT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an Assault Amphibian unit.

**STANDARD:** To verify operational readiness of equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Inspect SL-3.
2. Inspect AAV(s) and systems.
3. Inspect Ordnance Vehicle Logbook.
4. Inspect the weapon(s).
5. Inspect the communication suite.
6. Verify that all discrepancies are properly reported and reconciled in GCSS-MC.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles
4. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**
OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: GCSS-MC simulation virtual environment required for training.

1833-VOPS-2008: Install/Remove Special Mission Kits

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 36 months

DESCRIPTION: Assault Amphibious Vehicle Special Mission Kits include: Enhanced Appliqué Armor Kit, and Litter Kit.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To enhance vehicle capabilities/survivability.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct inventory.
2. Conduct PMCS.
3. Install kit.
4. Remove kit.

ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 8
AA BATTALION LOW DENSITY MOS EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paragraph</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PURPOSE</td>
<td>8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING</td>
<td>8001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES</td>
<td>8002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS</td>
<td>8003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDIVIDUAL EVENTS</td>
<td>8004</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

AA BATTALION LOW DENSITY MOS EVENTS

8000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Assault Amphibian Battalion low density MOS events that are not captured in their parent T&R. These events illustrate the unique tasks that are executed specifically in an AA Battalion by the 2841 and 0629 MOS.

8001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with either "0629" or "2841" indicating that the event is for that low density MOS.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the battalion and company level are:

   CMDC - Command and Control

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

8002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

8003. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0629-CMDC-2001</td>
<td>Advise Supported Unit on AAVC7 Communication System</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2841-CMDC-2001</td>
<td>Advise Supported Unit on AAVC7 Communication System</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8004. INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

0629-CMDC-2001: Advise Supported Unit on AAVC7 Communication System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 0629

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAVC7.

STANDARD: To enhance the supported unit's proficiency with system.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Configure and operate AAVC7 communications suite.
2. Support using unit with developing TTPs for C7 operations.
3. Support using unit with higher headquarters and EKMS required documents/timelines.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. A supported unit's operations/fires element is required to accomplish this task.
2. AA Battalion Radio Chiefs should attend the Ground Operations Specialist Course to enhance the AAV unit's ability to advise the supported unit.

2841-CMDC-2001: Advise Supported Unit on AAVC7 Communication System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 2841

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAVC7.

STANDARD: To enhance the supported unit's proficiency with system.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assist with communication suite configuration.
2. Assist supported unit with developing TTPs for C7 operations.
3. Assist supported unit with trouble shooting system.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. A supported unit's operations/fires element is required to accomplish this task.
2. AAVC7 communication technicians should attend the ground operations specialist course to enhance the AAV unit's ability to advise the supported unit.
APPENDIX A

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

AA .................................................. Assault Amphibian
AAR .................................................. After Action Review
AAV .................................................. Assault Amphibious Vehicle
AAV-TT ........................................... Assault Amphibious Vehicle Turret Trainer
AMPH ................................................. Amphibious Operations
APU .................................................. Auxiliary Power Unit
ATP .................................................. Army Training Publication
ATTP .................................................. Army Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
BDAR ................................................. Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
C2 ...................................................... Command and Control
CACCTUS ......................................... Combined Arms Command and Control Trainer Upgrade System
CAN .................................................. Combined Arms Network
CASEVAC .......................................... Casualty Evacuation
CAST ............................................... Combined Arms Staff Trainer
CBTS .................................................. Combat Support
CCIR .................................................. Commander's Critical Information Requirements
CCP .................................................. Casualty Collection point
CCS .................................................. Combat Convoy Simulator
CE ..................................................... Command Element
CEOI ................................................ Communications-Electronics Operation Instructions
CHOP ................................................ Change of Operational Control
CMDC ............................................... Command and Control
COA .................................................. Course of Action
COC .................................................. Combat Operations Center
COMSEC ........................................... Communications Security
COND ................................................ Conditioning
CRP .................................................. Combat Readiness Percentage
CSS .................................................. Combat Service Support
CVC .................................................. Combat Vehicle Crewman
DAGR ............................................... Defense Advanced GPS Receiver
DIDEA ................................................ Detect, Identify, Decide, Engage, and Assess
DoD .................................................. Department of Defense
DODIC ............................................... Department of Defense Identification Code
DRRS ................................................ Defense Readiness Reporting System
DVE .................................................. Drivers Vision Enhancer
DVTE ................................................ Deployable Virtual Training Environment
EA ..................................................... Engagement Area
ECM .................................................. Electronic Countermeasures
EPW .................................................. Enemy Prisoner of War
ERF .................................................. Electronic Remote Fill
FET .................................................. Family of Egress Trainers
FM ..................................................... Field Manual (Army)
FIST .................................................. Fire Support Team
FPL .................................................. Final Protective Line
FRAGO ............................................... Fragmentary Order
GCE .................................................. Ground Combat Element
GCSS-MC ......................................... Global Combat Support System—Marine Corps
GNRY ................................................ Gunner
GST .................................................. Gunner Skills Test
HBCT ........................................ Heavy Brigade Combat Team
HEDP ........................................ High Explosive, Dual Purpose
HHQ ............................................ Higher Headquarters
H&S ............................................. Headquarters and Service
ILOC ........................................... Intermediate Location
IP ................................................ Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace
ISMT .......................................... Indoor Simulated Marksmanship Trainer
JFEO ........................................... Joint Forcible Entry Operations
JP ................................................ Joint Publication
LCAVAT ........................................ Landing Craft and Amphibian Vehicle Assignment Table
LF ................................................ Landing Force
LMC ............................................ Launcher, Mine Clearance
LOC ............................................ Logistics Operation Center
LZ ................................................ Landing Zone
MAET .......................................... Modular Amphibious Egress Trainer
MAGTF ......................................... Marine Air-Ground Task Force
MCDP .......................................... Marine Corps Doctrinal Publication
MCM ............................................ Mobility/Countermobility
MCO ............................................ Marine Corps Order
MCPP .......................................... Marine Corps Planning Process
MCRP .......................................... Marine Corps Reference Publication
MCTP .......................................... Marine Corps Tactical Publication
MCWP .......................................... Marine Corps Warfighting Publication
MEB ............................................. Marine Expeditionary Brigade
MEF ............................................. Marine Expeditionary Force
METT-T ....................................... Mission, Enemy, Terrain and Weather, Troops and Support Available-Time Available
MOJT .......................................... Managed on the Job Training
MOS ............................................ Military Occupational Specialty
MPF ............................................ Maritime Pre-positioning Force
MPLs ........................................... Minimum Proficiency Levels
MFR ............................................. Maintenance Production Report
MSI ............................................. Modified Surf Index
MSPS .......................................... MOS-Specific Physical Standard
MTWS ......................................... MAGTF Tactical Physical Standard
OPORD ........................................ Operation Order
OPT ............................................ Operational Planning Team
OTI ............................................ Operations and Tactics Instructor
PDF ............................................. Principal Direction of Fire
PMCS ........................................... Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
PME ............................................. Professional Military Education
ROC-V .......................................... Recognition of Combat Vehicles
RFMSS ......................................... Range Facility Management Support System
RT ................................................ Rescue Team
SAT ............................................ Systems Approach to Training
SAVT .......................................... Supporting Arms Virtual Trainer
SBF ............................................. Support by Fire
SDZ ............................................. Surface Danger Zone
SUPT .......................................... Support
SUROB ......................................... Surf Observation Report
SVET .......................................... Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer
TAC ............................................ Tactical Operations
TAMIS ......................................... Total Ammunition Management Information System
TECOM ......................................... Training and Education Command
TEEP .......................................... Training Exercise and Employment Plan
TOCNET ....................................... Tactical Operations Center Intercommunications System
TP ................................................ Target Practice
TRNG ................................................................. Training
TRP ................................................................. Target Reference Point
UGWS ............................................................. Upgunned Weapons Station
UTM ................................................................. Unit Training Management
VBS2 ................................................................. Virtual Battlefield System 2
VCE ................................................................. Vehicle Crew Evaluator
VOPS ................................................................. Vehicle Operations
APPENDIX B

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Terms in this glossary are subject to change as applicable orders and directives are revised. Terms established by Marine Corps orders or directives take precedence after definitions found in Joint Publication 1-02, DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms.

A

After Action Review. A professional discussion of training events conducted after all training to promote learning among training participants. The formality and scope increase with the command level and size of the training evolution. For longer exercises, they should be planned for a predetermined times during an exercise. The results of the AAR shall be recorded on an after action report and forwarded to higher headquarters. The commander and higher headquarters use the results of an AAR to reallocate resources, reprioritize their training plan, and plan for future training.

Assessment. An informal judgment of the unit's proficiency and resources made by a commander or trainer to gain insight into the unit's overall condition. It serves as the basis for the midrange plan. Commanders make frequent use of these determinations during the course of the combat readiness cycle in order to adjust, prioritize or modify training events and plans.

C

Chaining. A process that enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate collective events and individual events that support a specific collective event. For example, collective training events at the 4000-Level are directly supported by collective events at the 3000-Level. When a higher level event by its nature requires the completion of lower level events, they are "chained"; Sustainment credit is given for all lower level events chained to a higher event.

Collective Event. A clearly defined, discrete, and measurable activity, action, or event (i.e., task) that requires organized team or unit performance and leads to accomplishment of a mission or function. A collective task is derived from unit missions or higher-level collective tasks. Task accomplishment requires performance of procedures composed of supporting collective or individual tasks. A collective task describes the exact performance a group must perform in the field under actual operational conditions. The term "collective" does not necessarily infer that a unit accomplishes the event. A unit, such as a squad or platoon conducting an attack; may accomplish a collective event or, it may be accomplished by an individual to accomplish a unit mission, such as a battalion supply officer completing a reconciliation of the battalion's CMR. Thus, many collective events will have titles that are the same as individual events; however, the standard and condition will be different because the scope of the collective event is broader.
Collective Training Standards (CTS). Criteria that specify mission and functional area unit proficiency standards for combat, combat support, and combat service support units. They include tasks, conditions, standards, evaluator instruction, and key indicators. CTS are found within collective training events in T&R Manuals.

Combat Readiness Cycle. The combat readiness cycle depicts the relationships within the building block approach to training. The combat readiness cycle progresses from T&R Manual individual core skills training, to the accomplishment of collective training events, and finally, to a unit's participation in a contingency or actual combat. The combat readiness cycle demonstrates the relationship of core capabilities to unit combat readiness. Individual core skills training and the training of collective events lead to unit proficiency and the ability to accomplish the unit's stated mission.

Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP). The CRP is a quantitative numerical value used in calculating collective training readiness based on the E-Coded events that support the unit METL. CRP is a concise measure of unit training accomplishments. This numerical value is only a snapshot of training readiness at a specific time. As training is conducted, unit CRP will continuously change.

Condition. The condition describes the training situation or environment under which the training event or task will take place. Expands on the information in the title by identifying when, where and why the event or task will occur and what materials, personnel, equipment, environmental provisions, and safety constraints must be present to perform the event or task in a real-world environment. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.).

Core Competency. Core competency is the comprehensive measure of a unit's ability to accomplish its assigned MET. It serves as the foundation of the T&R Program. Core competencies are those unit core capabilities and individual core skills that support the commander's METL and T/O mission statement. Individual competency is exhibited through demonstration of proficiency in specified core tasks and core plus tasks. Unit proficiency is measured through collective tasks.

Core Capabilities. Core capabilities are the essential functions a unit must be capable of performing during extended contingency/combat operations. Core unit capabilities are based upon mission essential tasks derived from operational plans; doctrine and established tactics; techniques and procedures.

Core Plus Capabilities. Core plus capabilities are advanced capabilities that are environment, mission, or theater specific. Core plus capabilities may entail high-risk, high-cost training for missions that are less likely to be assigned in combat.

Core Plus Skills. Core plus skills are those advanced skills that are environment, mission, rank, or billet specific. 2000-Level training is designed to make Marines proficient in core skills in a specific billet or at a specified rank at the Combat Ready level. 3000-8000-Level training produces combat leaders and fully qualified section members at the Combat Qualified level. Marines trained at the Combat Qualified level are those the
commanding officer feels are capable of accomplishing unit-level missions and of directing the actions of subordinates. Many core plus tasks are learned via MOJT, while others form the base for curriculum in career level MOS courses taught by the formal school.

D

Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). A comprehensive readiness reporting system that evaluates readiness on the basis of the actual missions and capabilities assigned to the forces. It is a capabilities-based, adaptive, near real-time reporting system for the entire Department of Defense.

Deferred Event. A T&R event that a commanding officer may postpone when in his or her judgment, a lack of logistic support, ammo, ranges, or other training assets requires a temporary exemption. CRP cannot be accrued for deferred "E-Coded" events.

Delinquent Event. An event becomes delinquent when a unit exceeds the sustainment interval for that particular event. The individual or unit must update the delinquent event by first performing all prerequisite events. When the unit commander deems that performing all prerequisite is unattainable, then the delinquent event will be re-demonstrated under the supervision of the appropriate evaluation authority.

E

Evaluation. Evaluation is a continuous process that occurs at all echelons, during every phase of training and can be both formal and informal. Evaluations ensure that Marines and units are capable of conducting their combat mission. Evaluation results are used to reallocate resources, reprioritize the training plan, and plan for future training.

E-Coded Event. An "E-Coded" event is a collective T&R event that is a noted indicator of capability or, a noted collective skill that contributes to the unit’s ability to perform the supported MET. As such, only "E-Coded" events are assigned a CRP value and used to calculate a unit's CRP.

Event Component. The major procedures (i.e., actions) that must occur to perform a Collective Event to standard.

Event (Training). 1) An event is a significant training occurrence that is identified, expanded and used as a building block and potential milestone for a unit's training. An event may include formal evaluations. 2) An event within the T&R Program can be an individual training evolution, a collective training evolution or both. Through T&R events, the unit commander ensures that individual Marines and the unit progress from a combat capable status to a Fully Combat Qualified (FCQ) status.

Exercise Commander (EC). The Commanding General, Marine Expeditionary Force or his appointee will fill this role, unless authority is delegated to the respective commander of the Division, Wing, or FSSG. Responsibilities and functions of the EC include: 1) designate unit(s) to be evaluated, 2) may designate an exercise director, 3) prescribe exercise objectives and T&R events to be evaluated, 4) coordinate with commands or agencies external to the Marine Corps and adjacent Marine Corps commands, when required.
Exercise Director (ED). Designated by the EC to prepare, conduct, and report all evaluation results. Responsibilities and functions of the ED include: 1) Publish a letter of instruction (LOI) that: delineates the T&R events to be evaluated, establishes timeframe of the exercise, lists responsibilities of various elements participating in the exercise, establishes safety requirements/guidelines, and lists coordinating instructions. 2) Designate the TEC and TECG to operate as the central control agency for the exercise. 3) Assign evaluators, to include the senior evaluator, and ensure that those evaluators are properly trained. 4) Develop the general exercise scenario taking into account any objectives/events prescribed by the EC. 5) Arrange for all resources to include: training areas, airspace, aggressor forces, and other required support.

Marine Corps Ground Training and Readiness (T&R) Program. The T&R Program is the Marine Corps' primary tool for planning and conducting training, for planning and conducting training evaluation, and for assessing training readiness. The program will provide the commander with standardized programs of instruction for units within the ground combat, combat support, and combat service support communities. It consolidates the ITS, CTS, METL and other individual and unit training management tools. T&R is a program of standards that systematizes commonly accepted skills, is open to innovative change, and above all, tailors the training effort to the unit's mission. Further, T&R serves as a training guide and provides commanders an immediate assessment of unit combat readiness by assigning a CRP to key training events. In short, the T&R Program is a building block approach to training that maximizes flexibility and produces the best-trained Marines possible.

Mission Essential Task(s) MET(s). A MET is a collective task in which an organization must be proficient in order to accomplish an appropriate portion of its wartime mission(s). MET listings are the foundation for the T&R Manual; all events in the T&R Manual support a MET.

Mission Essential Task List (METL). Descriptive training document that provides units a clear, war fighting focused description of collective actions necessary to achieve wartime mission proficiency. The service-level METL, that which is used as the foundation of the T&R Manual, is developed using Marine Corps doctrine, operational plans, T/Os, UJTL, UNTL, and MCTL. For community based T&R Manuals, an occupational field METL is developed to focus the community's collective training standards. Commanders develop their unit METL from the service-level METL, operational plans, contingency plans, and SOPs.

Operational Readiness (DOD, NATO). OR is the capability of a unit/formation, ship, weapon system, or equipment to perform the missions or functions for which it is organized or designed. May be used in a general sense or to express a level or degree of readiness.

Performance Step. Performance steps are included in the components of an Individual T&R Event. They are the major procedures (i.e., actions) a Marine unit must accomplish to perform an individual event to standard. They describe the procedure the task performer must take to perform the task under
operational conditions and provide sufficient information for a task performer to perform the procedure (may necessitate identification of supporting steps, procedures, or actions in outline form). Performance steps follow a logical progression and should be followed sequentially, unless otherwise stated. Normally, performance steps are listed only for 1000-level individual events (those that are taught in the entry-level MOS school).

**Prerequisite Event.** Prerequisites are the academic training and/or T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the event.

**R**

**Readiness (DOD).** Readiness is the ability of U.S. military forces to fight and meet the demands of the national military strategy. Readiness is the synthesis of two distinct but interrelated levels: a) Unit readiness--The ability to provide capabilities required by combatant commanders to execute assigned missions. This is derived from the ability of each unit to deliver the outputs for which it was designed. b) Joint readiness--The combatant commander's ability to integrate and synchronize ready combat and support forces to execute assigned missions.

**S**

**Section Skill Tasks.** Section skills are those competencies directly related to unit functioning. They are group rather than individual in nature, and require participation by a section (S-1, S-2, S-3, etc.).

**Simulation Training.** Simulators provide the additional capability to develop and hone core and core plus skills. Accordingly, the development of simulator training events for appropriate T&R syllabi can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time and cost. Therefore, in cases where simulator fidelity and capabilities are such that simulator training closely matches that of actual training events, T&R Manual developers may include the option of using simulators to accomplish the training. CRP credit will be earned for E-Coded simulator events based on assessment of relative training event performance.

**Standard.** A standard is a statement that establishes criteria for how well a task or learning objective must be performed. The standard specifies how well, completely, or accurately a process must be performed or product produced. For higher-level collective events, it describes why the event is being done and the desired end-state of the event. Standards become more specific for lower-level events and outline the accuracy, time limits, sequencing, quality, product, process, restrictions, etc., that indicate the minimum acceptable level of performance required of the event. At a minimum, both collective and individual training standards consist of a task, the condition under which the task is to be performed, and the evaluation criteria that will be used to verify that the task has been performed to a satisfactory level.

**Sustainment Training.** Periodic retraining or demonstration of an event required maintaining the minimum acceptable level of proficiency or capability required to accomplish a training objective. Sustainment training goes beyond the entry-level and is designed to maintain or further develop proficiency in a given set of skills.
**Systems Approach to Training (SAT).** An orderly process for analyzing, designing, developing, implementing, and evaluating a unit's training program to ensure the unit, and the Marines of that unit acquire the knowledge and skills essential for the successful conduct of the unit's wartime missions.

**Tactical Exercise Control Group (TECG).** A TECG is formed to provide subject matter experts in the functional areas being evaluated. The benefit of establishing a permanent TECG is to have resident, dedicated evaluation authority experience, and knowledgeable in evaluation technique. The responsibilities and functions of the TECG include: 1) developing a detailed exercise scenario to include the objectives and events prescribed by the EC/ED in the exercise LOI; 2) conducting detailed evaluator training prior to the exercise; 3) coordinating and controlling role players and aggressors; 4) compiling the evaluation data submitted by the evaluators and submitting required results to the ED; 5) preparing and conducting a detailed exercise debrief for the evaluated unit(s).

**Technical Exercise Controller (TEC).** The TEC is appointed by the ED, and usually comes from his staff or a subordinate command. The TEC is the senior evaluator within the TECG and should be of equal or higher grade than the commander(s) of the unit(s) being evaluated. The TEC is responsible for ensuring that the evaluation is conducted following the instructions contained in this order and MCO 1553.3A. Specific T&R Manuals are used as the source for evaluation criteria.

**Training Plan.** Training document that outlines the general plan for the conduct of individual and collective training in an organization for specified periods of time.

**Training Task.** This describes a direct training activity that pertains to an individual Marine. A task is composed of 3 major components: a description of what is to be done, a condition, and a standard.

**Unit CRP.** Unit CRP is a percentage of the E-Coded collective events that support the unit METL accomplished by the unit. Unit CRP is the average of all MET CRP.

**Unit Evaluation.** All units in the Marine Corps must be evaluated, either formally or informally, to ensure they are capable of conducting their combat mission. Informal evaluations should take place during all training events. The timing of formal evaluations is critical and should, when appropriate, be directly related to the units' operational deployment cycle. Formal evaluations should take place after the unit has been staffed with the majority of its personnel, has had sufficient time to train to individual and collective standards, and early enough in the training cycle so there is sufficient time to correctly identified weaknesses prior to deployment. All combat units and units' task organized for combat require formal evaluations prior to operational deployments.

**Unit Training Management (UTM).** Unit training management is the use of the SAT and Marine Corps training principles in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit on its wartime
mission. UTM governs the major peacetime training activity of the Marine Corps and applies to all echelons of the Total Force.

Waived Event. An event that is waived by a commanding officer when in his or her judgment, previous experience or related performance satisfies the requirement of a particular event.
Ammunition was calculated based on 100% of Table of Organization for individual training events and 100% of Table of Equipment for collective training events. The below chart depicts the total annual ammunition requirement for an AAV battalion and its personnel to train to standard on all events contained in this T&R Manual. Training events which list ammunition but do not require the expenditure of rounds have not been included in the below numbers. Dummy ammunition has been calculated based on an estimate of the total number of rounds required to adequately support the various training events that call for the particular DODIC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>3d AABN</th>
<th>2d AABN</th>
<th>4th AABN</th>
<th>CAB</th>
<th>CAC</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>139,800</td>
<td>82,200</td>
<td>107,700</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>155,900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A555</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>428,250</td>
<td>345,000</td>
<td>214,500</td>
<td>85,800</td>
<td>37,125</td>
<td>1,110,64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 API/API-T F/M2</td>
<td>428,250</td>
<td>345,000</td>
<td>214,500</td>
<td>85,800</td>
<td>37,125</td>
<td>1,110,64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A598</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Linked</td>
<td>19,600</td>
<td>18,200</td>
<td>9,450</td>
<td>10,500</td>
<td>1,400</td>
<td>59,150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A560</td>
<td>Cartridge, .50 Cal Dummy</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>4,800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod 1 Linked</td>
<td>62,392</td>
<td>51,600</td>
<td>28,080</td>
<td>11,232</td>
<td>10,500</td>
<td>163,804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B472</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Dummy</td>
<td>768</td>
<td>768</td>
<td>384</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>2,304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GG24</td>
<td>Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Screening</td>
<td>1,704</td>
<td>1,704</td>
<td>720</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>4,407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J143</td>
<td>Rocket Motor, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L311</td>
<td>Signal, Illumination Ground Red St</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312</td>
<td>Signal, Illumination Ground White St</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML25</td>
<td>Charge, Demolition Linear M59A1</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Gunnery Ammunition Requirements

The table below represents the ammunition allocation for each vehicle per the MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team Gunnery manual. This represents Crew, Section, and Platoon gunnery training and qualifications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GUNNERY AMMUNITION</th>
<th>50 Cal</th>
<th>40mm TP-T</th>
<th>A598 (.50 Blank)</th>
<th>REMARKS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZERO</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CREW GUNNERY

- **GT II (Crew Proficiency Course)**
  - 0 0 0
  - Gate To Live-Fire(GTLF) must be fired dry

- **GT III (Basic Machine Gun)**
  - 0 96 0
  - Live-fire machine gun

- **GT IV (Extended Range Machine Gun)**
  - 700 0 0
  - Extended range gunnery for combat arms unit conducted in AAV-TT

- **GT V (Crew Practice)**
  - 450 48 0
  - Live-fire practice prior to qualification table

- **GT VI (Crew Qualification)**
  - 450 56 0
  - Qualification table. Gate to Intermediate Gunnery

### SECTION GUNNERY

- **GT VII (Intermediate Section Proficiency)**
  - 0 0 350 MILES/Dry

- **GT VIII (Intermediate Section Practice)**
  - 0 0 350*
  - Dry fire practice prior to qualification

- **GT IX (Intermediate Section Qualification)**
  - 300 64 0
  - Live-fire section qualification. Gate to Advanced Gunnery

### PLATOON GUNNERY

- **GT X (Advanced Platoon Proficiency)**
  - 0 0 350 MILES/Dry

- **GT XI (Advanced Platoon Practice)**
  - 0 0 350*
  - Dry fire practice prior to qualification

- **GT XII (Advanced Platoon Qualification)**
  - 300 64 0
  - Live-fire platoon qualification

* Option of blank or dry fire.
ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

APPENDIX D

SIMULATION

Listed in this appendix are applicable simulators/simulations available to improve training for both individual Marines and unit training. Simulators and simulations provide the capability to develop and hone core and core plus competencies and capabilities. Accordingly, the use of training modeling and simulation systems for appropriate T&R events can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time, cost, and risk. For more information regarding training Modeling & Simulation (M&S) Systems, review website: https://ehqmc.usmc.mil/org/mccdc/TECOM/directorates/MTSB/Internal/default.aspx

1. Supporting Arms Virtual Trainer (SAVT) is a fixed-site, partial dome (260 x 60 degree), virtual, immersive training environment for Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTACs), Forward Air Controllers (FACs), and Joint Forward Observers (JFOs). SAVT provides a "hands-on," immersive, mission-based, combined arms training environment. Personnel shall use training scenarios that require placement of tactical ordnance on selected targets using Joint Close Air Support (JCAS) procedures and observed fire procedures for Naval Surface Fire Support (NSFS), Artillery and Mortar fire. SAVT will provide a briefing and after action room for a group of students to monitor, review mission-based training events, and conduct after-action discussions. SAVT trains Marines to approved standards of training and readiness (T&R) tasks.

2. Indoor Simulated Marksmanship Trainer (ISMT) is an interactive three dimensional audio/video weapons simulator that provides enhanced small arms training in marksmanship, weapons employment, indirect fire, and tactical decision-making for Marines. The ISMT simulates range firing for basic infantry weapons, tactical employment training, call for fire, and shoot/no shoots decision-making drills. The ISMT can be utilized to train individuals, fire teams, and squads effectively and efficiently to the approved standards of combat skills and readiness.

3. Combat Convoy Simulator (CCS) is an interactive immersive training environment for convoy operations during combat, focusing on command and control. Other training capabilities include call for fire, call for close air support, mounted patrols, logistics support, high target extraction, MEDEVAC, and procedures for use of weapons in compliance with rules of engagement (ROE) and local TTPs. A single CCS suite of six vehicles provides for individual, crew, and platoon level training (up to 30 Marines at a time). The CCS trains Marines to approved standards of combat skills and readiness.

4. Deployable Virtual Training Environment (DVTE) is a deployable laptop PC based simulation system capable of emulating organic and supporting Infantry Battalion weapons systems and training scenarios to facilitate T&R based training. DVTE provides each installation and deployed Marine Forces with MAGTF (MEU level) Staff training, individual and collective skills sustainment, rapid planning, and almost spontaneous mission rehearsal capability. DVTE increases training of individual and unit core skills enhancing a rapid, innovative and interactive small-unit leader decision making, and increased combined arms Training and pre-certification
The following is a list of the DVTE training applications/capabilities:

a. **Virtual Battlespace 2 (VBS2)** is an interactive, three-dimensional synthetic environment in which small unit tactics may be practiced among team members. Photo-realistic terrain, user created mission scenarios, and variable environmental conditions enhance the team training experience. Mission planning and mission rehearsal can be executed from squad to platoon level. VBS2 can be used to support Fire Support Training, convoy operations and tactical guided discussions.

b. **Recognition of Combatants (ROC)** a series consisting of applications covering Improvised Explosive Device (ROC-IED), Suicide Bomber (ROC-SB), Vehicle (ROC-V), and Aerial (ROC-Aerial) are self-paced computer based training tools designed to improve awareness and recognition of various combatant capabilities and functional considerations.

c. **Operational and Tactical Language and Cultural Training System (OTCLTS)** is a self-paced language and cultural training application that allows the user to learn Iraqi Arabic, Indonesian, Pashto, Dari, and French languages along with cultural considerations.

d. **Forward Observer PC Simulator (FOPCSIM)** is an individual Fires trainer which provides training on the basic concepts of fire support. FOPCSIM is a procedural trainer for artillery and mortar Call for Fire. FOPCSIM is also the forward observer component of the Deployable Virtual Training Environment (DVTE) Combined Arms Network (CAN) that provides a training tool for integration of artillery and close air support with maneuver forces.

e. **Combined Arms Planning Tool (CAPT)** is a standalone tool that can be used to enter and test all elements of your fire support plan. Doctrinal rules have been incorporated into the program, so that once the fire support plan is entered, CAPT runs a "rules based" test on the plan to identify potential trouble areas.

f. **Combined Arms Network (CAN)** is a computer based training tool that provides standard based training for individual Forward Observers, Forward Air Controllers and Joint Terminal Attack Controllers (JTAC) as well as team training for company fire support teams (FiST). CAN currently supports JTAC/JFO certification training under the TACP T&R Manual.

5. The MAGTF Tactical Warfare Simulation (MTWS) is a simulation program which uses constructive input to train battle staffs from Battalion through MEF, Marine Forces Reserve (MARFORRES) and internal MEF components i.e., Ground Combat Element, Aircraft Combat Element, and Combat Service Support Element. The primary mission of MTWS is two-fold: to provide a realistic combat environment for commanders and their staffs to refine their decision-making skills and to assist in the Command and Control (C2) aspects of tactical field exercises. The system is designed to provide realistic representation of forces from any military organization, a method for defining any existing or new weapons systems is provided via a flexible user defined parametric database. It provides military personnel with the opportunity to experience and acquire skill in combat operations without the expense and risk of taking real troops to the field.

6. **Combined Arms Command and Control Trainer Upgrade System (CACCTUS)**
provides an institutional means to effectively train Marine staffs and units in all aspects of effectively integrating combined arms assets. The CACCTUS capability provides the full range of combined arms staff training and provides state of the art modeling and simulation networking technology to provide realistic Combined Arms Fire Support for the Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF). The high resolution combat simulation provides the ability to provide ground truth in the exercise, stimulate organic C2 Systems, visually display the impact of supporting arms fires and realistically portray the coordinated actions of friendly forces and the action/reaction of the enemy maneuver forces. The automated communication system replicates tactical communication nets required for command and control of exercising units allowing the training audience to communicate normal warfighting communications and process orders and other information/questions to response cell controllers. CACCTUS provides an automated after action review capability for live and simulated training thereby allowing the Marine Corps to meet its service training requirements.

7. AAV-Turret Trainer (AAV-TT) is a non-deployable, stand-alone interactive simulation training platform. The AAV-TT utilizes surplus AAV Turret and Upgunned Weapons Station (i.e., M-2 & Mk-19) modified to enable integration with a virtual training environment. In order to provide training of precision gunnery, weapons employment and crew coordination to individuals and crews, the AAV-TT consists of instructor/operator station, driver station, AAV turret, and intercom system. High-fidelity computer generated scenarios enable conduct of Gate-to-Live-Fire (GTLF), in addition to tactical decision making and maneuvering at the platoon level. The AAV-TT incorporates a driver's station with a 2500 field of view screen and vehicle controls, and utilizes tactical CVC helmets to allow crew coordination training between the vehicle commander in the turret, the crewmember in the driver's station and the Instructor/Operator.

8. Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET) is an underwater escape trainer designed to duplicate the conditions a Marine may face as a crewmember or embarked personnel if he or she is trapped in a vehicle upside down and/or under water. The SVET is used to train egress from rollover/submerged ground vehicles reinforcing operational and emergency procedures.

Upgrades made to the current simulation system should be capable of keeping pace with applicable modifications made to the AAV7 family of vehicles in order to replicating the above tasks in as realistic a functional environment (replication of the vehicle) as possible for the vehicle commander stationed in the UGWS turret and the vehicle driver in the driver's station.

9. For more information on current simulations, contact your local Simulation Centers. The following is the contact information:

   a. Battle Simulation Centers (Scheduling Office)

      (1) I MEF: (760) 725-2385

      (2) II MEF: (910) 451-5435

      (3) III MEF:

         • MCB Camp Butler: 011-81-611-722-7219/ DSN 315 622-7219/7516
b. Ground Training Simulators (Scheduling Office)

(1) MCB Camp Lejeune: (910) 451-7392

(2) MCB Camp Pendleton: Simulators & Trainers can be scheduled via RFMSS. Training Support Division Help Desk/Ref Desk (760) 725-4444.


(5) MAGTF-TC: DVTE (760) 830-5622; SAVT (760) 362-2324; CACCTUS (760) 830-1382; CCS (760) 830-4192 & ISMT (760) 830- 4187. Schedule ODS and HMMWV Egress Assistance Trainer via RFMSS.
APPENDIX E

INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS

| INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE EVENTS | 1000 | E-2 |
| 1000 LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS | 1001 | E-3 |
| 2000 LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS | 1002 | E-19 |
| 3000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS | 1003 | E-25 |
| 4000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS | 1004 | E-35 |
| 5000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS | 1005 | E-39 |
### APPENDIX E

**INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS**

Listed in this appendix are the individual and collective gunnery events utilized within the AAV T&R manual.

#### 1000. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>E-Coded</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons</td>
<td>E-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>E-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gunnery Skills Test</td>
<td>E-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform Gun Table I (S/L)</td>
<td>E-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Boresighting</td>
<td>E-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1006</td>
<td></td>
<td>Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>E-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1007</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>E-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1008</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)</td>
<td>E-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1009</td>
<td></td>
<td>Engage Targets (S/L)</td>
<td>E-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1010</td>
<td></td>
<td>Direct Unit Fires (S/L)</td>
<td>E-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1011</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher (S/L)</td>
<td>E-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons</td>
<td>E-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>E-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gunnery Skills Test</td>
<td>E-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform Gun Table I (S/L)</td>
<td>E-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Boresighting</td>
<td>E-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1006</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>E-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1007</td>
<td></td>
<td>Engage Targets (S/L)</td>
<td>E-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-1008</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher (S/L)</td>
<td>E-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Detailed Disassembly/Assembly</td>
<td>E-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect Headspace and Timing</td>
<td>E-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Direct Boresighting of Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>E-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>E-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)</td>
<td>E-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2006</td>
<td></td>
<td>Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)</td>
<td>E-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2007</td>
<td></td>
<td>Direct Section Fires (S/L)</td>
<td>E-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2008</td>
<td></td>
<td>Install/Remove M240</td>
<td>E-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2009</td>
<td></td>
<td>Engage a Target with M240 (S/L)</td>
<td>E-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Boresighting</td>
<td>E-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station</td>
<td>E-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gate to Live-Fire (S)</td>
<td>E-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gun Table I (S/L)</td>
<td>E-28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1001. 1000 LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1803-GNRY-1001: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1803

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a MK19, M2, or M240 machine gun and reference.

**STANDARD:** To keep equipment in operating condition.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Clear the machine guns.
2. Perform safety check.
3. Disassemble the weapon.
4. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
5. Report worn or defective parts.
6. Assemble the weapon.
7. Perform function check.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning
2. TM 08521A-10/1A Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, MK19 MOD 3
3. TM 08670A/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

---

1803-GNRY-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1803

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. PMCS turret exterior.
2. PMCS turret interior.
3. Lubricate turret components.
4. Operate electrical components.
5. Operate manual components.
6. Complete UGWS pre-operation checklist.

REFERENCES:
1. TI 09674A-0D/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Requires M257 test equipment.

1803-GNRY-1003: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, all associated training devices, and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies prior to the conduct of live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognition of Threat Vehicles and Theater Threat Vehicles (within 10 min).
2. Identify Ammunition (within 3 min).
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on MK19 machine gun (within 8 min).
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M2 machine gun (within 21 min).
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M240 machine gun (within 7 min).
6. Perform misfire procedures on turret mounted weapons (within 5 min).
7. Load/Unload turret mounted weapons (within 20 min).

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
3. TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning
5. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
6. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A159 Ctg, 7.62mm Dummy M172 Linked</td>
<td>100 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A560 Ctg, .50 Cal Dummy M2</td>
<td>200 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B472 Ctg, 40mm Dummy M922 / M922A1</td>
<td>96 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is a pre-requisite event required to be conducted prior to all AAV vehicle mounted live-fire events.

**1803-GNRY-1004:** Perform Gun Table I (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1803  **GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVP7 with associated equipment and crew.

**STANDARD:** To complete all required tasks in accordance with TC 3-20.21-1 prior to conducting live-fire.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills (within 28 sec).
2. Perform crew roll over drills (within 28 sec).
3. Send, receive radio reports (within 15 min).
4. Send, receive digital reports (within 10 min).
5. Evacuate an injured crewmember (within 28 sec).
6. Boresight an AAV (within 15 min).
7. Mount and remove turret mounted weapons (within 20 min).

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
4. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E-5  Enclosure (1)
MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Performance steps 5 and 7 are MOS-Specific Physical Standards required for the MOS of 1803. See Appendix G for further detail.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1803-GNRY-1005:</th>
<th>Conduct Boresighting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EVALUATION-CODED:</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:</td>
<td>12 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOS PERFORMING:</td>
<td>1803</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRADES:</td>
<td>2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, machine guns, boresight kit, boresight target, associated SL-3, and references, while acting as a member of a crew.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
2. Align MK19 aiming point.
3. Align M2 aiming point.
4. Conduct day sight boresight.
5. Conduct thermal sight boresight.
6. As required, perform mantlet sight alignment procedures.
7. Conduct retention procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
3. TM 8F419D-OI Technical Manual for M36E-T1 Thermal Sight System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of Gun Table I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1803-GNRY-1006:</th>
<th>Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EVALUATION-CODED:</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:</td>
<td>12 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOS PERFORMING:</td>
<td>1803</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRADES:</td>
<td>2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:  FORMAL

CONDITION:  Given an AAVP7, inhibit zone aligning tool, and reference.

STANDARD:  To establish safe and effective fields of fire in accordance with TM 10004A-10/1E.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone.
2. Confirm the inhibit zone elevation.
3. Confirm inhibit zone 2 azimuths.
4. Confirm inhibit zone 1 azimuths.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
2. TM 10004A-25&P/2E Maintenance Instructions and Repair Parts List
   Organizational, Intermediate, and Depot Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)
   Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

   EQUIPMENT:  Inhibit Zone Aligning Tool.

1803-GNRY-1007:  Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED:  NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:  12 months

MOS PERFORMING:  1803

GRADES:  2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:  FORMAL

CONDITION:  Given a boresighted AAV with crew, ammunition, and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD:  To place center of beaten zone on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify thumb slide position.
2. Fire the MK19.
3. Adjust sight as required.
4. Fire the M2.
5. Make adjustments to T&E as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
ORDNANCE:  1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).  2. 50 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.  3. B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg., 50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg., 50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg., 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>16 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:  This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.

1803-GNRY-1008:  Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED:  NO  
SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:  12 months

GRADES:  2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:  FORMAL

CONDITION:  Given an AAV and scenario.

STANDARD:  To destroy or neutralize a threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MISCELLANEOUS:
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard during the Gunnery Tables.

1803-GNRY-1009: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Designed to evaluate the Platoon Commander's ability to engage stationary or moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary vehicle.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with weapons and ammunition.

STANDARD: To score a minimum of 70 points on 70% of the engagements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform One Defensive Engagement: Day and Night
2. Perform One Offensive Engagement: Day and Night
3. Perform One Short Halt or Traffic Control Point: Day OR Night
4. Perform One Short Range Machine Gun Engagement: Day OR Night
5. Perform One CBRN Engagement: Day and Night
6. Perform One Short-Range Engagement: Day OR Night
7. Perform One Long Range Engagement: Day OR Night

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibi

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE: 1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 2. DODICs B584/B542 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555/A576. 3. 300 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>300 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>300 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>160 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire one practice and one qualification.
3. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
4. Scenario Development, vehicle posture, and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLS) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:
Advanced Gunner (9-10)
Qualified Gunner (7-8)
Unqualified (0-6)

1803-GNRY-1010: Direct Unit Fires (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a task-organized force and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Emplace weapon systems.
2. Develop fire control measures.
3. Determine fire pattern.
4. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
5. Determine engagement priority.
6. Direct weapons control status.
7. Determine engagement technique.
8. Issue fire command.
9. Control rates of fire.
10. Send reports.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ORDNANCE:**
1. 300 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
2. DODICs B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555/A576.

**DODIC**
- A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked: 300 rounds per Marine
- A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked: 300 rounds per Marine
- BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked: 64 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

---

**1803-GNRY-1011:** Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Platoon Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVP7 with crew and SL-3.

**STANDARD:** To provide obscuration for the vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Load grenade launcher.
2. Close all hatches.
3. Clear all personnel to rear of launcher firing zone (164 ft/50 m).
4. Ensure power to vehicle and UGWS.
5. Arm smoke grenade launcher.
6. Fire grenade launcher(s).
7. As required, perform immediate action.

**REFERENCES:** TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ORDNANCE:**

**DODIC**
GG24- Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr

**QUANTITY**
8 grenades per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**
1. Don't place any part of body in front of launchers while loading or unloading.
2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

**1833-GNRY-1001:** Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSgt

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given MK19, M240B, and M2 machine guns and references.

**STANDARD:** To keep equipment in operating condition.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Clear the machine guns.
2. Perform safety check.
3. Disassemble the weapon.
4. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components.
5. Report worn or defective parts.
6. Assemble the weapon.
7. Perform function check.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50; M2, Heavy Barrel
2. TM 08521A-OR/1 Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, MK19 MOD 3
3. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
1833-GNRY-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSgt

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. PMCS turret exterior.
2. PMCS turret interior.
3. Lubricate turret components.
4. Operate electrical components.
5. Operate manual components.
6. Complete UGWS pre-operation checklist.

REFERENCES:
1. TI 09674A-0D/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
3. TM 9-1040-267-20&P ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE MANUAL, M 257 GRENADE LAUNCHER

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Requires M257 test equipment.

1833-GNRY-1003: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSgt

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, all associated training devices, and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies prior to the conduct of live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform recognition of threat vehicles and theater threat vehicles (within 10 min).
2. Identify ammunition (within 3 min).
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on MK19 machine gun (within 8 min).
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M2 machine gun (within 21 min).
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M240 machine gun (within 7 min).
6. Perform misfire procedures on turret mounted weapons (within 5 min).
7. Load/Unload turret mounted weapons (within 20 min).

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
3. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50; M2, Heavy Barrel
5. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A159 Ctg, 7.62mm Dummy M172 Linked</td>
<td>100 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A560 Ctg,.50 Cal Dummy M2</td>
<td>200 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B472 Ctg, 40mm Dummy M922 / M922A1</td>
<td>96 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is a pre-requisite event required to be conducted prior to all AAV vehicle mounted live-fire events.

1833-GNRY-1004: Perform Gun Table I (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with associated equipment and crew.

STANDARD: To complete all required tasks in accordance with TC 3-20.21-1 prior to conducting live-fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills (within 28 sec).
2. Perform crew roll over drills (within 28 sec).
3. Send and receive radio reports (within 15 min).
4. Send and receive digital reports (within 10 min).
5. Evacuate an injured crewmember (within 28 sec).
6. Boresight an AAV (within 15 min).
7. Mount and remove turret mounted weapons (within 20 min).
REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
4. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Performance steps 5 and 7 are MOS-Specific Physical Standards required for the MOS of 1833. See Appendix G for further detail.

1833-GNRY-1005: Conduct Boresighting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO          SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, machine guns, boresight kit, boresight target, associated SL-3, and references, while acting as a member of a crew.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment, within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
2. Align MK19 aiming point.
3. Align M2 aiming point.
4. Conduct day sight boresight.
5. Conduct thermal sight boresight.
6. As required, perform mantlet sight alignment procedures.
7. Conduct retention procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
2. TM 8F419D-OI Technical Manual for M36E-T1 Thermal Sight System

MISCELLANEOUS:
**Administrative Instructions:** This task will be performed to standard as part of Gun Table I.

**1833-Gnry-1006:** Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

**Evaluation-Coded:** NO  
**Sustainment Interval:** 12 months  

**MOS Performing:** 1833

**Grades:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**Initial Training Setting:** Formal

**Condition:** Given a boresighted AAVP7 with crew, ammunition, and stationary target at 500m.

**Standard:** To center the beaten zone on the target.

**Performance Steps:**
1. Verify thumb slide position.
2. Fire the MK19.
3. Adjust sight as required.
4. Fire the M2.
5. Make adjustments to T&E as required.

**References:**
1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3  
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2  
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

**Support Requirements:**

**Ordnance:** 1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 2. DODICs B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555. 3. 50 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576, and 16 rounds of DODIC B542 or BA12 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg, .50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked</td>
<td>16 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked</td>
<td>16 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Range/Training Area:**  
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**Miscellaneous:**

**Administrative Instructions:** This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.
1833-GNRY-1007: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gunnery that demonstrates engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s).

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with weapons, ammunition, and a fire command, while utilizing the DIDEA process.

STANDARD: To achieve desired effects on targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to fire command.
2. Perform One Defensive Engagement: Day and Night.
4. Perform One Short Halt or Traffic Control Point: Day OR Night.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE: 1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 2. DODICs B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555/A576. 3. 175 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>175 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>175 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>96 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,
MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire two practices, one qualification, and a night shoot.
3. Gunners will utilize/validate a range card to engage targets.
4. Short-range is 400-800m; long-range is 800-1800m.
5. All steps can be performed in degraded gunnery (non-electric).

1833–GNRY-1008: Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with crew and SL-3.

STANDARD: In order to provide obscuration for the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Load grenade launcher.
2. Close all hatches.
3. Clear all personnel to rear of launcher firing zone (164 ft/50m).
4. Ensure power to vehicle and UGWS.
5. Arm smoke grenade launcher.
6. Fire grenade launcher(s).
7. As required, perform immediate action.

REFERENCES:
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE:

DODIC QUANTITY
GG24- Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr 8 grenades per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Duddled
MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Don't place any part of body in front of launchers while loading or unloading.
2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1002. 2000 LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1833-GNRY-2001: Conduct Detailed Disassembly/Assembly

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 machine gun and reference.

STANDARD: To keep the weapon in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove extractor.
2. Remove bolt switch and stud.
3. Remove cocking lever.
4. Remove sear stop.
5. Remove sear slide.
6. Remove sear and spring.
7. Remove firing pin extension and firing pin.
8. Assemble bolt group.

REFERENCES: MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

1833-GNRY-2002: Inspect Headspace and Timing

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 machine gun and gauge.

STANDARD: To confirm that the weapon is prepared for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure weapon is clear.
2. Insert go/no go gauge.
3. Adjust headspace as required.
4. Cock charging handle.
5. Insert no fire gauge.
6. Attempt to fire.
7. Adjust timing as required.
8. Insert fire gauge.
9. Attempt to fire.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50; M2, Heavy Barrel

1833-GNRY-2003: Direct Boresighting of Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with crew, machine guns, boresight kit, boresight target, associated SL-3, and references.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
2. Align MK19 aiming point.
3. Align M2 aiming point.
4. Conduct day sight boresight.
5. Conduct thermal sight boresight.
6. As required, perform mantlet sight alignment procedures.
7. Conduct retention procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
3. TM 8F419D-01 Technical Manual for M36E-T1 Thermal Sight System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of Gun Table I.

1833-GNRY-2004: Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, inhibit zone aligning tool, and references.

STANDARD: To establish safe and effective fields of fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone.
2. Confirm the inhibit zone elevation.
3. Confirm Inhibit Zone 2 azimuths.
4. Confirm Inhibit Zone 1 azimuths.

REFERENCES:
1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
2. TM 10004A-25&P/2E Maintenance Instructions and Repair Parts List
   Organizational, Intermediate, and Depot Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)
   Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

   EQUIPMENT: Inhibit Zone Aligning Tool.

1833-GNRY-2005: Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and scenario.

STANDARD: To destroy or neutralize the threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

   SIMULATION EVALUATION:
MISCELLANEOUS:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This task will be performed to standard during the gunnery tables.

---

**1833-GNRY-2006:** Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Enforces skills required of the Vehicle Commander to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

**BILLETS:** Vehicle Commander

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV with associated crew and equipment, a tactical scenario, and direction from higher.

**STANDARD:** So that the crew is effectively employed in support of concept of operations during direct fire engagements in accordance with MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Communicate weapon status.
2. Identify targets.
3. Communicate engagement criteria with driver.
4. Assess effects on target.
5. Orchestrate ammunition replenishment.
6. Enforce crew alert levels.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTES:** Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.
**ORDNANCE:** 300 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>300 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>300 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>64 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**1833-GNRY-2007:** Direct Section Fires (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months  

**DESCRIPTION:** Enforces skills required of the Section Leader to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

**BILLETs:** Section Leader  

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV section, a tactical scenario and direction from higher.

**STANDARD:** So that weapons are employed in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.  
2. Establish target priorities.  
3. Establish target reference points (TRPs).  
4. Define engagement areas (EAs).  
5. Identify phase lines and trigger points.  
6. Assign sectors of fires.  
7. Issue appropriate fire commands.  
8. Control rates of fire.  
9. Send reports.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery  
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery  
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.

**ORDNANCE:** 300 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>300 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>300 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>64 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1833-GNRY-2008:** Install/Remove M240

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVC7.

**STANDARD:** To provide security for the vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Install pintle mount.
2. Secure machine gun mount on pintle.
3. Install machine gun on machine gun mount.
4. Remove machine gun from machine gun mount.
5. Remove machine gun mount from pintle.
6. Remove pintle mount.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

---

**1833-GNRY-2009:** Engage a Target with M240 (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 1833

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVC7 with crew and SL-3.
STANDARD: To suppress the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare weapon for firing.
2. Load the M240.
3. Set estimated range.
4. Aim in on target.
5. Execute fire commands.
6. Change barrel, as required.
7. Troubleshoot M240, as required.

REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>ISMT</td>
<td>Marine Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: Turret required for full simulation.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62

QUANTITY
300 rounds per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1003. 3000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AAV-GNRY-3001: Conduct Boresighting

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with crew, machine guns, boresight kit, boresight target, associated SL-3, and references.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment within 15 minutes.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
2. Align MK19 aiming point.
3. Align M2 aiming point.
4. Conduct day sight boresight.
5. Conduct thermal sight boresight.
6. As required, perform mantlet sight alignment procedures.
7. Conduct retention procedures.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
2. TM 8F419D-01 Technical Manual for M36E-T1 Thermal Sight System

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1803-GNRY-1005
1833-GNRY-1005

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This task will be performed to standard as part of Gun Table I.

**AAV-GNRY-3002:** Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a boresighted AAVP7, ammunition, and stationary target at 500m.

**STANDARD:** To place center of beaten zone on the target.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Verify thumb slide position.
2. Fire the MK19.
3. Adjust sight as necessary.
4. Fire the M2.
5. Make necessary adjustments to T&E.

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** AAV-GNRY-3001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1803-GNRY-1007
1833-GNRY-1006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:** 1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 2. B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555. 3. 50 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576, and 16 rounds of DODIC B542 or BA21 will be used to execute this task will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>50 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked  16 rounds per AAV  
BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked  16 rounds per AAV

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.

**AAV-GNRY-3003:** Conduct Gate to Live-Fire (S)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given an AAV Turret Trainer, scenario and Instructor-Operator (IO).

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum rating of qualified per simulated table.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Qualify on 15 of 15 pre-live-fire exercises (Exercise GC01-GC15)  
2. Qualify on 1 of 3 Pre-qualification Gate to Live-Fire exercises  
   (Exercise PC01-PC03)  
3. Qualify on 1 of 3 qualification Gate to Live-Fire exercises (Exercise QC01-QC03)

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery  
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**
1803-GNRY-1003  1803-GNRY-1004  1803-GNRY-1008  
1833-GNRY-1003  1833-GNRY-1004  1833-GNRY-2005  
1833-GNRY-2006

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**
AAV-GNRY-4003  AAV-GNRY-5003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MISCELLANEOUS:**
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) contained within MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event.
3. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 12 months.
4. Pre-qualification and qualification must occur on different scenarios.

AAV-GNRY-3004: Conduct Gun Table I (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7.

STANDARD: To demonstrate technical proficiencies as an AAV crew.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills.
2. Perform crew roll over drills.
3. Send, receive radio reports.
4. Send, receive digital reports.
5. Evacuate an injured crewmember.
6. Boresight an AAV.
7. Mount and remove turret mounted weapons.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-CMDC-1003 1803-CMDC-1005 1803-GNRY-1004
1803-GNRY-1005 1833-CMDC-1003 1833-CMDC-2003
1833-GNRY-1004 1833-GNRY-1005

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a prerequisite in order to conduct live-fire.
2. Event 3 can be accomplished to standard utilizing simulation.
3. All event components can be conducted at the ramp.
AAV-GNRY-3005: Conduct Gun Table II (L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table II is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage (dry fire) stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle (short halt/tactical control point) posture.

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 and full sized targets, in a daylight or limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
2. Task #1: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing UGWS.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
6. Task #5: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing UGWS.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AAV-GNRY-3003 AAV-GNRY-3004

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1008 1833-GNRY-2005 1833-GNRY-2006

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: Hours captured in Gate to Live-Fire event.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,
MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a prerequisite in order to conduct live-fire.
2. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
3. A crewmember must conduct one day and one night engagement as the gunner.

AAV-GNRY-3006: Conduct Gun Table III (L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1    MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO     SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table III is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array with the MK19 from a stationary vehicle.

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, 3/4 scale targets (if available), and allocated ammunition in a daylight or limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
2. Task #1: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
7. Task #6: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
8. Task #7: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS.
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS.

REFERENCES:
1. DA-Pam 385-63 Range Safety
2. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003   1833-GNRY-1003   AAV-GNRY-3001
AAV-GNRY-3001    AAV-GNRY-3002    AAV-GNRY-3002
AAV-GNRY-3003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1008   1833-GNRY-2005   1833-GNRY-2006

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTES:** This includes the sustainment hours per month required by MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

**ORDNANCE:**
1. DODIC B584 may be used in place of BA21.
2. As a planning factor, allocate an extra 12% of 40 mm ammunition for crew remediation.

**DODIC QUANTITY**

| BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked | 96 rounds per AAV |

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**
1. Crews must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live-fire.
2. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
3. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
4. A crewmember must conduct one day and one night engagement as the gunner.

**AAV-GNRY-3007:** Conduct Gun Table IV (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Gun Table IV is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array at extended ranges with the M2 from a stationary or moving (short halt/tactical control point) vehicle utilizing the UGWS.

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVP7, full-scaled targets (3/4 optional), and allocated ammunition in a daylight or limited visibility environment.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
2. Task #1: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
6. Task #5: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the UGWS.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS.
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets using the UGWS.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1003</td>
<td>1833-GNRY-1003</td>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3004</td>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3005</td>
<td>AAV-GNRY-3006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1803-GNRY-1008</td>
<td>1833-GNRY-2005</td>
<td>1833-GNRY-2006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: This includes the sustainment hours per month required by MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

**ORDNANCE:**
1. Only DODIC A555 or A576 will be used, not both. 2. A557 may be used in place of A555. 3. As a planning factor, allocate an extra 5% of .50 cal ammunition for crew remediation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>700 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>700 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**
1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. A crewmember must conduct one day and one night engagement as the gunner.

**AAV-GNRY-3008:** Conduct Gun Table V (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table V is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving (short halt/tactical control point) vehicle utilizing all weapons from the UGWS.

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, full-scale targets (3/4 optional), and allocated ammunition in a daylight or limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
2. Task #1: Engage multiple targets one stationary one moving utilizing the UGWS.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
6. Task #5: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS.

REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-2002
AAV-GNRY-3001  AAV-GNRY-3002  AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004  AAV-GNRY-3005  AAV-GNRY-3006
AAV-GNRY-3007

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-CMDC-1004 1803-GNRY-1008 1833-CMDC-2002
1833-GNRY-2005 1833-GNRY-2006

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: This includes the sustainment hours per month required by MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
**ORDNANCE:** 1. Only 450 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used, not both. 2. DODIC A557 may be used in place of A555. 3. As a planning factor, allocate an extra 5% of .50 cal and an extra 12% of 40 mm ammunition for crew remediation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>450 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>450 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>48 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**
1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Crew’s must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live-fire.
3. A crewmember must conduct one day and one night engagement as the gunner.

**AAV-GNRY-3009:** Conduct Gun Table VI (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Gun Table VI is designed to evaluate the crew on engaging moving and stationary targets using all vehicle weapon systems while in the defensive or offensive postures.

**CONDITION:** Given an AAVP7, full-scaled targets, and allocated ammunition in a daylight or limited visibility environment.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Task #0: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS.
2. Task #1: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the UGWS.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS.
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS.
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS.
6. Task #5: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing UGWS.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS.
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving targets utilizing the UGWS.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS.
REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-2002
AAV-GNRY-3001 AAV-GNRY-3002 AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004 AAV-GNRY-3005 AAV-GNRY-3006
AAV-GNRY-3007 AAV-GNRY-3008

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-CMDC-1004 1803-GNRY-1008 1833-CMDC-2002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES: This includes the sustainment hours per month required by MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.

ORDNANCE: 1. 450 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both. 2. As a planning factor, allocate an extra 5% of .50 cal and an extra 12% of 40 mm ammunition for crew remediation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>450 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>450 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>56 rounds per AAV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. Crews will receive an overall qualification rating (Distinguished, Superior, Qualified, Unqualified) for Table VI based on the common scoring model dual qualification criteria(qualified tasks and total crew points) per the MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
4. Crews must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live-fire.

1004. 4000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AAV-GNRY-4001: Conduct Gun Table VII (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to fire and maneuver as a section.

CONDITION: Given an AAV maneuver element section (with ITESS), allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-T.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003 1833-GNRY-1003 AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004 AAV-GNRY-3009

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-GNRY-2005 1833-GNRY-2007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE: Consider receiving an additional 10% of .50 Cal as a planning factor for remediation.

DODIC QUANTITY
A598 Ctg,.50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked 350 rounds per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. All crews must have passed the GST, GT I, and GTLF within the previous six months.
4. The crew's VC and driver must have passed GT I and GTLF as a team prior to live-fire.

**AAV-GNRY-4002**: Conduct Gun Table VIII (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

| MCT 1.6.1 | MCT 1.6.4 |

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**DESCRIPTION**: Gun Table VIII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks and prepare section for qualification.

**CONDITION**: Given an AAV maneuver element section, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets, and operation order.

**STANDARD**: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-T.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

**REFERENCES**:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS**:

| 1803-GNRY-1003 | 1833-GNRY-1003 | AAV-GNRY-3003 |
| AAV-GNRY-3004 | AAV-GNRY-3009 | AAV-GNRY-4001 |

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS**:

| 1833-GNRY-2005 | 1833-GNRY-2007 |

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**:

**SIMULATION EVALUATION**:

| SIMULATED | SUITABILITY | SIMULATOR | UNIT OF MEASURE | HOURS | PM |
| Yes | S/L | AAV-TT | Crew Hours | 4 | Y |

**ORDNANCE**: Consider receiving an additional 10% of .50 Cal as a planning factor for remediation.

| DODIC | QUANTITY |
| A598 Ctg,.50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked | 350 rounds per crew |

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA**:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. All crews must have passed the GST, GT I, and GTLF within the previous six months.
4. The crew's VC and driver must have passed GT I and GTLF as a team prior to live-fire.

AAV-GNRY-4003: Conduct Gun Table IX (L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1    MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO    SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table IX is designed to evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment.

CONDITION: Given an AAV maneuver element section, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets, and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commanders METT-T.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003    1833-GNRY-1003    1833-GNRY-2002
AAV-GNRY-3001    AAV-GNRY-3002    AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004    AAV-GNRY-3009    AAV-GNRY-4001
AAV-GNRY-4002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1833-GNRY-2007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:
SIMULATED  SUITABILITY  SIMULATOR   UNIT OF MEASURE   HOURS     PM
Yes        L          AAV-TT       Crew Hours     4         Y

ORDNANCE: 1. DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this table, NOT both. 2. B584 may be used in place of BA21. 3. Consider receiving an additional 10% of .50 Cal and 40mm as a planning factor for remediation.

DODIC QUANTITY
A555 Ctg,.50 Cal Ball M33 Linked 1200 rounds per Section
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked 1200 rounds per Section
BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked 256 rounds per Section

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Section Qualification must be conducted live-fire using full-caliber ammunition.
3. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
4. All Crews must have passed the GST, GT I, and GTLF within the previous six months.
5. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.
6. The crew's VC and driver must have passed GT I and GTLF as a team prior to live-fire.

1005. 5000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AAV-GNRY-5001: Conduct Gun Table X (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1           MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO    SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table X is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks.

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped maneuver element platoon (with ITESS), allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.
STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-T.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-GNRY-4003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1803-GNRY-1008</th>
<th>1803-GNRY-1010</th>
<th>1833-GNRY-2005</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1833-GNRY-2006</td>
<td>1833-GNRY-2007</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE: Consider receiving an additional 5% of .50 Cal as a planning factor for remediation.

DODIC QUANTITY
A598 Ctg,.50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked 4200 rounds per Platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

EQUIPMENT: If ITESS is unavailable, Table X will be conducted using dry fire techniques.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.
AAV-GNRY-5002: Conduct Gun Table XI (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XI is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks.

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped maneuver element platoon, allocated training ammunition, fully sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with the rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-T.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AAV-GNRY-4003  AAV-GNRY-5001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1008  1833-GNRY-2005

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORDNANCE: Consider receiving an additional 5% of .50 Cal as a planning factor for remediation.

DODIC QUANTITY
A598 Ctg,.50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked 4200 rounds per Platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

EQUIPMENT: If ITESS is unavailable, Table XI will be conducted using dry fire techniques.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.
MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.

AAV-GNRY-5003: Conduct Gun Table XII (L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XII is designed to evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment.

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped maneuver element platoon, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commander's METT-T.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803-GNRY-1003  1833-GNRY-1003  1833-GNRY-2002
AAV-GNRY-3001  AAV-GNRY-3002  AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3009  AAV-GNRY-4003  AAV-GNRY-5001
AAV-GNRY-5002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803-CMDC-1004  1803-GNRY-1008  1803-GNRY-1010
1833-GNRY-2007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMULATED</th>
<th>SUITABILITY</th>
<th>SIMULATOR</th>
<th>UNIT OF MEASURE</th>
<th>HOURS</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>AAV-TT</td>
<td>Crew Hours</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ORDNANCE: 1. 3600 rounds of DODIC A576 OR A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both. 2. DODIC B584 may be used in place of BA21. 3. Consider receiving an additional 5% of .50 Cal and 12% of 40mm as a planning factor for remediation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>QUANTITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A555 Ctg, .50 Cal Ball M33 Linked</td>
<td>3600 rounds per Platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked</td>
<td>3600 rounds per Platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 1 Linked</td>
<td>768 rounds per Platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
1. AAV-TT.
2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE).
3. ITESS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCRP 3-10B.2 HBCT Gunnery.
2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live-fire training event.
3. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.
ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

APPENDIX F

REFERENCES

This appendix contains a list of references contained within the AAV T&R Manual. References can be found at the following locations:


**Marine Corps**

**Doctrinal Publications** - [https://www.doctrine.usmc.mil/](https://www.doctrine.usmc.mil/)


**Army Publications** - [https://atn.army.mil/](https://atn.army.mil/)


Additional publication links can be found at - [http://www.marines.mil/News/Publications.aspx](http://www.marines.mil/News/Publications.aspx)

**Joint Publications (JPs)**

JP 1-02 Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms

JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations

JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation

JP 3-02.2 Amphibious Embarkation

JP 3-15 Barriers, Obstacles, and Mine Warfare for Joint Operations

**Marine Corps Warfighting Publications (MCWPs)**

MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations

MCWP 3-17 Engineering Operations

MCWP 3-17.4 Engineer Reconnaissance

MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility

MCWP 3-30 Marine Air-Ground Task Force Command and Control

MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations

MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations

MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

**Marine Corps Tactical Publications (MCTPs)**

MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

MCTP 3-10A Marine Infantry Battalion

MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

MCTP 3-31A Supporting Arms Coordination in Amphibious Operations

MCTP 13-10C Unit Embarkation Handbook

MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement

MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics

MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations

MCTP 3-40G Services in an Expeditionary Environment

MCTP 3-40H MAGTF Supply Operations

MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training
MCTP 13-10D Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations

**Marine Corps Reference Publications (MCRPs)**
MCRP 1-10.1 Organization of the United States Marine Corps
MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
MCRP 2-10A.7 Reconnaissance Reports Guide
MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
MCRP 3-10A.1 Infantry Company Operations
MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
MCRP 3-31.6 Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (JFIRE)
MCRP 3-40A.7 Patient Movement
MCRP 3-40A.9 First Aid
MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
MCRP 8-10B.10 Radio Operators Handbook
MCRP 8-10B.4 Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat
MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide

**Marine Corps Orders (MCOs)**
MCO 1553.3_ Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
MCO 3120.13 Policy for Marine Expeditionary Unit
MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)
MCO 3570.1_ Range Safety
MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
MCO 8010.1_ Class V (W) Planning Factors for Fleet Marine Force Combat Operations
MCO P8020.10_ Marine Corps Ammunition and Explosives Safety Program

**Technical Instructions (TIs)**
TI 09674A-OD/1 Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services, Lubrication Instructions and Operational Checklists for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Family of Vehicles

**Technical Manuals (TMs)**
TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning
TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
TM 08463A-10 Command Communications System, Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 (AAVC7A1)
TM 08521A-10/1A Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, MK19 MOD 3
TM 08670A/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
TM 08953A-10/1 Advanced Gunnery Training System
TM 09880C-OR DAGR Operator's Pocket Guide
TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
TM 8F419D-01 Technical Manual for M36E-T1 Thermal Sight System
TM 8H667-12&P/2 Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Drivers Vision Enhancer (DVE)
TM 9-1040-267-20&P ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE MANUAL, M 257 GRENADE LAUNCHER
TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
TM 10004A-25&P/2E Maintenance Instructions and Repair Parts List Organizational, Intermediate, and Depot Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)

Field Manuals (FMs)
FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
FM 3-96 Brigade Combat Team
FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques

Army Training Publications (ATPs)
ATP 3-90.15 Site Exploitation
ATP 4-90 Brigade Support Battalion

Army Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (ATTPs)
ATTP 3-21.71 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley)

Training Circulars (TC)
TC 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
TC 3-20.21-2 Vehicle Crew Evaluator Exportable Packet
TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
TC 25-8 Training Ranges

Navy Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (NTTPs)
NTTP 3-59.3 Naval Amphibious Surf Manual
NTTP 3-06.1 Riverine Operations
NTTP 3-15.24 Mine Countermeasures in Support of Amphibious Operations

Other
AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
BMU-HNBK-5400.1 BEACHMASTER HANDBOOK
COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3 Wet Well Operations Manual
COMDTINST M16500.3A Aids to Navigation Manual-Technical
COMDTINST M16500.7A Aids to Navigation Manual-Administration
DA-Pam 385-63 Range Safety
NAVMC 8011 Class V Material Allowance for Training, Programmed Testing, and Security
ROC-V Combat Vehicle Identification Guide (Visible) 2009
SL-3-07707C/07267C/07268C Components List for Assault Amphibious Vehicle
Model 7A1 Family of Vehicles
ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE (AAV) TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

APPENDIX G

MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS

1. **Purpose.** This appendix identifies MOS-specific Physical Standards and describes the execution of assessments designed to evaluate a Marine's physical capabilities, in order to provide Commanders reasonable assurance a Marine has the physical capacity to perform the regularly assigned and recurrent duties of the MOS.

2. **Evaluation.** Marines must either 'pass' or 'fail' event or performance step assessments to the standards set forth within this manual.

3. **Requirements.** The following events are to be performed to the standard contained within this appendix during Entry Level Training in order to achieve initial MOS qualification.
   a. For the 1803 MOS:
      1803-GNRY-1004, Performance Step 5
      1803-GNRY-1004, Performance Step 7
      1803-VOPS-1006, Performance Step 3
      0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 2, NAVMC 3500.44_ Infantry T&R
   b. For the 1833 MOS:
      1833-GNRY-1004, Performance Step 5
      1833-GNRY-1004, Performance Step 7
      1833-VOPS-1010, Performance Step 3
      0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 2, NAVMC 3500.44_ Infantry T&R

4. **Evaluation Sequencing.** The MOS-specific Physical Standards events are not intended to be conducted in a single, continuous session. However, if the Commander schedules these events to occur in sequence within a 24-hour period, adequate transition between events should permit Marines the opportunity to recover, stretch, hydrate, and prepare for the next event. Total rest permitted between events is determined at the Commander's discretion.

5. **Uniform and Equipment**
   a. **Fighting Load.** See NAVMC 3500.44_ (Infantry T&R Manual) Appendix F for the Fighting Load gear list. The Utility uniform may be substituted with the Combat Vehicle Crewman (CVC) uniform.

   (1) This load will be worn/carried by MOSs listed within paragraph 3 when executing the following events:
   
   1803-GNRY-1004, performance step 7
   1833-GNRY-1004, performance step 7
   0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 2, NAVMC 3500.44_ Infantry T&R
(2) Additional equipment carried for MOS-specific events is detailed in paragraph 6.

b. CVC Uniform

(1) The CVC uniform will be worn by MOSs listed within paragraph 3 when executing the following events:

1803-GNRY-1004, performance step 5  
1803-VOPS-1006, performance step 3  
1833-GNRY-1004, performance step 5  
1833-VOPS-1010, Performance Step 3

(2) Additional equipment carried for MOS-specific events is detailed in paragraph 6.

c. Substituting Equipment. Marines may substitute surrogate items to replicate the weight of unavailable equipment. The total weight of the equipment carried will be within 10% of the total prescribed pack weight.

6. Events Assessed. The following paragraphs outline the expected conduct of assessments, in support of a factor of either MOS assignment or retention:

a. 1803-GNRY-1004 and 1833-GNRY-1004, Performance Step 5, Evacuate an injured crewmember proxy event.

(1) Description. The functional movement for this assessment is a clean-and-press. The clean-and-press will be a single repetition lift of an Olympic bar with a total weight of 115 lbs.

(2) Environment. This assessment may be conducted either indoors or outdoors, on a generally level and firm surface.

(3) Standard. Clean and press an Olympic bar with a total weight of 115 lbs., and then lower to the deck.

(4) Required Equipment. One Olympic lifting bar with a total of 115 lbs. of weight.

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will begin with feet shoulder width apart or under the hips. The bar should be above the boot laces at the start. Only the overhand grip can be used in this lift.

(b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command is "Begin." On the command "Begin," the Marine will execute a clean-and-press. While the clean-and-press occurs in a fluid motion, the first move of the lift is the clean. The clean begins by lifting the bar with arms locked, and the bar close to the body. The cleaning motion ends when the shoulders are fully shrugged and the hips, knees, and ankles are extended. At this point, drop underneath the bar to catch the weight at shoulder level. The next motion of the lift is the press. Dip by slightly breaking at the hips and knees, and then drive upward with the hips and shoulders until the arms are locked out and the upper arm is next to the ear.
(c) Marines are encouraged to 'use-their-legs,' in order to lift the Olympic bar, and to avoid 'lifting-with-their-back.' However, no penalty will be assessed if Marine chooses not to use their legs.

(d) Once elbow lock-out has occurred, the Olympic bar will be lowered in a fluid, controlled motion from shoulder-height, then to the deck, and neither thrown nor dropped. While lowering the surrogate to the deck, Marines must maintain a supportive curvature of the spine, and bend their knees.

b. 1803-GNRY-1004 and 1833-GNRY-1004, Performance Step 7, Mount and remove turret mounted weapons proxy event.

(1) Description. The functional movement for this assessment is similar to a clean-and-press wherein the Marine will clean-and-press a mock-up MK19 Heavy Machine Gun, and lower the mock-up back to ground-level.

(2) Environment. This assessment may be conducted either indoors or outdoors, on a generally level and firm surface.

(3) Standard. Perform a single lift of a mock-up MK19 from ground to overhead, wherein the elbows are momentarily locked out.

(4) Required Equipment. One (1) Mock-up MK19 Heavy Machine Gun. Local commanders have the discretion to use a training aid of similar dimensions in place of a mock-up MK19 should the mock-up not be available. An actual MK19 may be used if the mock-up is not available.

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will either stand erect or crouched-down with both feet flat-the-ground. Distance between the Marine's feet should be shoulder-width apart. The mock-up will be at rest, at the ground-level. The Marine can utilize either an overhand or underhand grip.

(b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command is "Begin." On the command "Begin," the Marine will lift the mock-up from the ground, to a point directly overhead, wherein the elbows are momentarily locked-out.

(c) Marines are encouraged to 'use-their-legs,' in order to generate the mock-up's upward momentum. However, no penalty will be assessed if Marines choose not to use their legs.

(d) Once elbow lock-out has occurred, the mock-up will be lowered in a fluid, controlled motion from shoulder-height, then to the deck, and neither thrown nor dropped. While lowering the mock-up to the deck, Marines must maintain a supportive curvature of the spine, and bend their knees.

c. 1803-VOPS-1006 and 1833-VOPS-1010, Performance Step 3, Attach tow bar proxy event.

(1) Description. The functional movement for this assessment is a deadlift. The deadlift will be a single repetition lift and hold of an Olympic bar with a total weight of 150 lbs.
(2) **Environment.** This assessment may be conducted either indoors or outdoors, on a generally level and firm surface.

(3) **Standard.** Deadlift and hold an Olympic bar with a total weight of 150 lbs. at knuckle height for 30 seconds, and then lower to the deck.

(4) **Required Equipment.** One Olympic lifting bar with a total of 150 lbs. of weight.

(5) **Execution**

   (a) The Marine will begin with feet shoulder width apart or under the hips. The bar should be above the boot laces at the start and shoulders slightly forward of the bar. Either the overhand, underhand, or alternating grip may be used.

   (b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command is "Begin." On the command "Begin," the Marine will execute a deadlift. When executing the deadlift, keep your chest high and maintain the curve in the lower back. While keeping the arms straight during the lift, keep the weight on the heels and extend the knees first, then hips at the top of the lift. The lift is completed when the hips are extended, knees are straight and shoulders behind the bar.

   (c) Marines are encouraged to 'use-their-legs,' in order to lift the Olympic bar, and to avoid 'lifting-with-their-back.'

   (d) Once the deadlift position has been achieved, and the Olympic bar has been lifted to knuckle height, the Marine will maintain that position for 30 seconds. After 30 seconds the Olympic bar will be lowered to the deck in a fluid, controlled motion while maintaining the curve in the lower back while doing so.

   d. 0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 1, Ensure that you and the casualty are no longer under direct enemy fire.

(1) **Description.** This is a 50 meter movement, simulating moving from a covered and concealed position, to a casualty's position, and dragging that casualty out of direct fire to a safe position.

(2) Refer to NAVMC 3500.44 Infantry T&R manual Appendix F for follow-on instruction in the conduct of the Casualty Drag.

7. **Performance.** Marines must complete the minimum performance requirements in each event to demonstrate that they have the physical capability to perform in the particular Assault Amphibian MOS.
LIST OF T&R EVENTS TRAINED TO STANDARD BY TACTICAL DECISION KITS

1. Below are the events that will now include Tactical Decision Kit as an acceptable simulator to conduct simulated training repetitions for those events where the Deployed Virtual Training Environment has already been identified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1003-TAC-1004</td>
<td>APPLY TACTICAL DRIVING TECHNIQUES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1003-TAC-1001</td>
<td>APPLY TACTICAL DRIVING TECHNIQUES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1003-TAC-1002</td>
<td>DEPLOY AAV IMMEDIATE ACTION DRILLS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>